常春藤 www.ivyenglish.com.cn 爱上英语的第一站

赖世雄优能英语系列

赖氏经典英语语法

新版

A Guide to English Grammar

赖世雄◎著

第一位进入中央人民广播电台播讲的台湾英语教学大师，被誉为“华人英语教父”，全国十大英语教学风云人物，大连外国语学院客座教授，清华外语学院荣誉校长。

畅销海峡两岸百万册的
权威英语工具书

最容易学习、最容易吸收的英语语法书
附赠赖教授完全讲解光盘
英语大师为你亲授语法课！



外文出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGES PRESS
全国百佳出版社

VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.com

赖氏经典英语语法

新版

A Guide to English Grammar

赖世雄◎著

外文出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGES PRESS
全国百佳出版社

系，达到水到渠成的效果，这才是我录制教学音频的初衷。在讲解过程中，我偶尔会脱离书本的例句，即兴造出一些更加有趣的例句来调动大家的热情，达到快乐学习的效果。另外，《赖氏经典英语语法》在一版再版的过程中，书中的不少例句也进行了与时俱进的修改和增补，所以你听到的句子可能和书上的例句不是一模一样，但正是因为如此，语法的学习反而充满了乐趣，因为你不仅吸收了双倍的知识，更感受到了严谨语法的别样趣味。

最后祝大家学习愉快！

赖世雄

于台北常春藤

目录

第一章　句子的形成

概说 1

第一节　可作主语的词类 2

1. 名词作主语 2
2. 代词作主语 2
3. 动名词或不定式短语作主语 2
4. 名词性从句作主语 4
5. 名词短语作主语 11
6. 表距离的地点副词短语作主语 12

第二节　动词的种类及其用法 13

概说 13

1. 动词 (verb) 基本上可分为五大类 13
2. 如何判断完全不及物动词 13
3. 兼作及物与不及物动词之常用动词 14
4. 不及物动词可作及物动词，用同系名词作其宾语 15
5. 完全及物动词与完全不及物动词 15
6. 完全及物动词出现的形态 16
7. 完全不及物动词出现的形态 16
8. 不完全不及物动词 18
9. 不完全不及物动词的判断方法 18
10. 不完全不及物动词的种类及其表语的用法 19
11. 不完全不及物动词的重要相关短语 28
12. 完全及物动词 29
13. 完全及物动词的用法 29
14. 不完全及物动词 35
15. 不完全及物动词的分类及用法 35
16. 授予动词 46
17. 间接宾语与直接宾语倒置原则 47
18. 与 of 连用的授予动词 49
19. 表“提供”的授予动词 50
20. 其他补充要点 51

第三节　结　　论 53

1. 五大句型 53
2. 祈使句、感叹句、问句 55
3. 结语 62

EXERCISE 63

第二章　两句的连接方法

概说 69

第一节　连接符号 71

1. 破折号 71
2. 冒号 72

第三节　关系副词 112
1. 关系副词的种类 112
2. 关系副词的功能 112
3. where 的用法 112
4. when 的用法 113
5. why 的用法 113
6. how 的用法 114
7. 关系副词使用要点 114

第四节　关系指示代词 117
1. 关系指示代词由指示代词变化而成 117
2. 关系指示代词的功能 117

第五节　复合关系代词 118
1. 复合关系代词的种类 118
2. whoever 的用法 118
3. whomever 的用法 119
4. whichever 的用法 120
5. what 的用法 120
6. whatever 的用法 121
7. 加油站 121
8. whatever 及 whoever 亦可作副词连词 121
9. however 有两种词性 122
10. whether 的用法 123
11. however 的特殊句型 124

第六节　准关系代词 125
1. 准关系代词的种类 125
2. 准关系代词形成的条件 125
3. than 作准关系代词的用法 125
4. as 作准关系代词的用法 126
5. "such + n." 之后绝不可用 like（像）加以修饰 128
6. 比较 "the same...as..." 与 "the same...that..." 的不同 129
7. as 可代替主句 129
8. 只能与单数可数名词使用的结构 130
9. 数量词不受限 133
10. 准关系代词 but 的用法 133

EXERCISE 135

第四章　非谓语动词

概说 141

第一节　不定式 142
1. 不定式的种类 142
2. 不定式的功能 142
3. 名词不定式的用法 142

4. 形容词不定式的用法 147
5. 副词不定式的用法 150
6. 独立不定式 154
7. 疑问词 + 不定式 = 名词短语 155
8. that 从句可化简为不定式 157
9. to be 的省略 159
10. prove + to be 159
11. 不定式短语作宾语补语 160
12. 意愿动词与虚拟语气的关系 161
13. was / were to have + 过去分词 162
14. 不定式作主语之结构变化 162
15. 不定式的省略 163
16. 不定式有时亦可形成感叹句 163
17. 原形不定式 163
18. 知觉动词与原形不定式的关系 164
19. 使役动词与原形不定式的关系 164
20. help（帮助）的用法 165
21. 原形不定式的特殊结构 166

第二节 分词 168
概说 168
1. 分词可作形容词用 168
2. 分词可作表语用 172
3. 分词可作名词用 176
4. 分词可作副词用 177
5. 分词结构——动词变化 178
6. 分词结构——单句化简法 181
7. 分词短语——定语从句化简法 184
8. 测验站 185
9. 分词结构——状语从句化简法 186
10. 表身体组织的名词可变成过去分词当形容词用 187
11. 少数现在分词可当介词使用 188
12. 独立分词短语 189
13. 与使役动词有关的重要分词短语 189

第三节 动名词 191
概说 191
1. 动名词的第一功能——主语 191
2. 动名词的第二功能——be 动词后的表语 193
3. 动名词的第三功能——动词的宾语 195
4. 动名词的第四功能——介词的宾语 198
5. 所有格与动名词的关系 199
6. 动名词亦可与名词连用，形成复合名词 201
7. “动名词 + 宾语”作主语的变化 202
8. 有些动名词亦可作可数的普通名词用 203

第十三节 behind 482
第十四节 into 483
第十五节 within 484
第十六节 without 485
第十七节 above 486
第十八节 over 487
第十九节 below 489
第二十节 beneath 489
第二十一节 under 490
第二十二节 underneath 492
第二十三节 against 492
第二十四节 along 493
第二十五节 before 493
第二十六节 beyond 494
第二十七节 during 494
第二十八节 through 495
第二十九节 besides 496
第三十节 till / until 496
第三十一节 since 497
第三十二节 beside 497

EXERCISE 498

第十四章 反意疑问句

1. 反意疑问句的使用规则 503
2. 句中有否定副词 504
3. 句中有助动词短语 504
4. 否定反意疑问句中 not 的位置 505
5. 反意疑问句须用人称代词 505
6. "I + 表意见动词 + that 从句" 的反意疑问句 505
7. need 作一般动词及助动词的反意疑问句 506
8. 助动词不止一个时如何反问 506

EXERCISE 507

第一章　句子的形成

概说

1. 任何一个句子一定由主语（subject，简写成 S）及动词（verb，简写成 V）形成。

例: John works hard.
S V
（约翰工作很努力。）

He plays the piano well.
S V
（他钢琴弹得很好。）

Mary seems to be fond of learning English.
S V
（玛丽似乎喜欢学英语。）

2. 有时主语可以省略，而形成祈使句。这种祈使句句首为原形动词，之前省略了 You should（你应当）。

例: Work hard. = (You should) work hard.
原形V
（努力工作。）

Be quiet. = (You should) be quiet.
（安静。）

> **注意**
>
> 祈使句变成否定形式时，要在原形动词前加 Don't。
>
> 例: Don't fool around.
> （别游手好闲。）
>
> Don't be silly.
> （别傻了。）

第一节　可作主语的词类

一般所见到的结构中，通常是以名词作主语，但除了名词以外，还可用代词、动名词或不定式短语、名词性从句、名词短语、表距离的地点副词短语等作主语。兹介绍如下：

1. 名词作主语：

例: The child is apt to tell lies.
（这孩子喜欢说谎。）

Gold is of much value.
（黄金很值钱。）

2. 代词作主语：

例: He always keeps his promise.
（他总是信守承诺。）

It is a lot of fun to climb mountains.
（爬山蛮好玩的。）

3. 动名词或不定式短语作主语：

动词绝不可直接当主语，一定要变成动名词或不定式短语，如此才可视为名词的对等语，作主语用。

例: See him makes me angry. (×，See 为动词)
→ Seeing him makes me angry. (✓，Seeing 为动名词)
（看到他就令我生气。）

See him is my purpose of coming here. (×，See 为动词)
→ To see him is my purpose of coming here. (✓，To see 为不定式)
（我来这儿是为了看他。）

a. 动名词作主语

用动名词作主语，通常用以表示已知的事实或曾经做过的经历。

试译下列句中的主语：

集邮是他的爱好之一。

由“爱好”一词得知，此处的“集邮”乃是一种经历。
故应用动名词短语 Collecting stamps，而成：
Collecting stamps is one of his hobbies.

再译下列句中的主语：

听音乐使我快乐。

由"使我快乐"得知，"听音乐"是说话者曾经做过的事，故仍用动名词短语 Listening to music 作主语，而成：

Listening to music makes me happy.

b. 不定式作主语

用不定式作主语时，通常表示一种意愿、目的或未完成的事。

试译下列句中的主语：

出国读书是我最大的愿望。

由"愿望"一词得知此处的"出国读书"乃是一种意愿或尚未做的事，故应以不定式短语 To study abroad 当主语，而成：

To study abroad is my greatest desire.

再译下列句中的主语：

到日本游玩是我今年的计划。

由"计划"一词得知说者尚未到过日本游玩（go to Japan for a visit），故此处应使用不定式短语 To go to Japan for a visit 作主语，而成：

To go to Japan for a visit is my plan for this year.

注意:

1) 不定式或动名词短语作主语时，往往会形成主语太长的现象，故通常均用代词 it 作形式主语，置于句首，而将真正主语（亦即不定式或动名词短语）移至句尾。动名词移至句尾时，通常改为不定式短语。

例: Collecting stamps is one of his hobbies.

= It is one of his hobbies to collect stamps.

形式主语 真正主语

Listening to music makes me happy.

= It makes me happy to listen to music.

形式主语 真正主语

To study abroad is my greatest desire.

= It is my greatest desire to study abroad.

形式主语 真正主语

2) 有时我们亦可见到被 it 代替的动名词短语移至句尾时，仍保留动名词形态而不变成不定式短语。但此种用法并不普遍，初学语法者宜尽量避免。

例: It is interesting to learn English. (佳)

It is interesting learning English. (可)

（学英语很有趣。）

3) 下列句型则属例外情形，it 要代替动名词短语，不可使用不定式短语：

It is no use + 动名词短语

例: It is no use crying over spilt milk.

（覆水难收。）

It is no use asking him for help.

（向他求救是没有用的。）

注意

It is no use + 动名词短语

= It is useless + 不定式短语

= It is of no use + 不定式短语

= There is no use / sense / point + in + 动名词短语

例: It is useless to cry over spilt milk.

= It is of no use to cry over spilt milk.

= There is no use in crying over spilt milk.

（覆水难收。）

4. 名词性从句作主语：

a. 从事翻译时，我们会碰到类似这样的句子：

他不学习令我生气。

这个句子的主语虽然是“他不读书”，但若译成 He doesn't study 则大错特错。

He doesn't study makes me angry. (×)

因为 He doesn't study 是句子。所谓句子，就是一开头就是主语的结构（此处的 He 就是主语）。句子绝不能当主语，一定要变成名词性从句方可作主语。

故本句的正确译法应为：

That he doesn't study makes me angry. (√)

名词性从句

→ what he wrote (名词性从句)
（他写什么）

When did he come? (问句)
→ when he did come
came
（did 为一般过去时，故 come 改为 came）
→ when he came (名词性从句)
（他何时来）

How does he do it? (问句)
→ how he does do it
does
（does 为第三人称单数一般现在时，故 do 改为 does）
→ how he does it (名词性从句)
（他怎么做这件事）

注意

who、what、which（哪一个）为疑问代词，若在问句中作主语，变成名词性从句时，结构不变。

例: Who came here? (问句)
主语
→ who came here (名词性从句)
（谁来这儿）

What happened last night? (问句)
主语
→ what happened last night (名词性从句)
（昨晚发生什么事）

Which was bought? (问句)
主语
→ which was bought (名词性从句)
（哪个被买走）

C. 名词性从句的功能

我们已知，名词性从句乃由句子或问句变化而成，和动名词或不定式短语一样，名词性从句也要被视为名词。由于具有名词的特性，故可作主语、宾语或在 be.动词之后作表语。

which to buy　　　　　买哪一个

whom to talk to　　　　与谁谈

注意:

1) 疑问副词形成的名词短语中，疑问副词因为是副词的性质，故不作不定式短语中及物动词的宾语。但疑问代词形成的名词短语中，疑问代词因具名词的性质，故一定要作不定式短语中动词或介词的宾语。故 what、whom、which 在上列名词短语中，分别作 do、see、buy、to（介词）的宾语。

2) 名词短语因具名词性质，故亦可作主语，系由名词性从句化简而成。

例: Where to meet him is not decided yet.

= Where we should meet him is not decided yet.

（在哪里见他还未决定。）

How to handle the problem depends on how much money we can collect.

= How we can handle the problem depends on how much money we can collect.

（我们如何处理这问题要视我们能募集到多少钱而定。）

6. 表距离的地点副词短语作主语：

from + 地方名词 + to + 地方名词

此为表距离的地点副词短语，亦可作主语，与单数的 be 动词连用。

例: From Shanghai to Beijing is about 1000 kilometers.

（从上海到北京大约 1000 公里。）

上面例句中，主语亦可用 it 代替，而形成下列结构：

It is about 1000 kilometers from Shanghai to Beijing.

c. 但由中文的翻译得知："他变成"或"他正变成"。

这两句的语意均不完全，故知 became 是意思不完全的不及物动词，不能单独存在，之后要接补充语，如此句意才完全，故下列两句的 became 之后有补充语，句意完全，属正确的句子。

例: He became happy.

S　　　s.c.

（他变得快乐了。）

He became a good boy.

S　　　s.c.

（他变成好孩子了。）

10. 不完全不及物动词的种类及其表语的用法:

以下赖老师将不完全不及物动词分成六大类，从 a.~f. 逐一说明。

a. be 动词

be 动词之后可用名词（含名词对等语，如名词性从句、名词短语、动名词、不定式等）或形容词（含作形容词的现在分词、过去分词、介词短语、地点副词或地点副词短语等）作表语。

> **注意**
>
> 用名词作表语时，be 动词译成"是"；用形容词作表语时，be 动词不必译出；用地点副词或地点副词短语作表语时，be 动词译成"在"。

＊be 动词之后有十一种表语:

1) 名词:

例: He is a great hero. (is 译成"是")

（他是大英雄。）

2) 名词性从句:

例: The trouble with me is that I lack money. (is 译成"是")

（我的麻烦是缺钱。）

The problem is whether he can join us. (is 译成"是")

（问题是他是否能加入我们。）

3) 名词短语:

例: The question is when to set out.（is 译成"是"）

（问题是何时出发。）

4) 作名词用的动名词短语：

例: My hobby is collecting stamps. (is 译成“是”)
（我的爱好是集邮。）

5) 作名词用的不定式短语：

例: My purpose here is to see him. (is 译成“是”)
（我来这里的目的是要见他。）

6) 形容词：

例: She is beautiful. (is 不必译出)
（她很美。）

7) 作形容词用的现在分词：

例: The story is interesting. (is 不必译出)
（这故事真有趣。）

8) 作形容词用的过去分词：

例: I am interested in the story. (am 不必译出)
（我对这故事感兴趣。）

9) 作形容词用的介词短语：
此类介词短语由“of + 抽象名词”形成。

例: The book is | of great value. / valuable. | (is 不必译出)
（这本书很有价值。）

The machine is | of no use. / useless. | (is 不必译出)
（那部机器毫无用处。）

10) 地点副词：

例: She is there. (is 译成“在”)
（她在那儿。）

They are upstairs. (are 译成“在”)
（他们在楼上。）

Is he home now?
（他现在在家吗？）

在这儿，赖老师告诉你两个简单的方法：

方法 1：

V-ing 之前的 be 动词可译成“正在”时，该 V-ing 就是现在分词。

例: He is washing the car.

（他正在洗车。）

故 washing 为现在分词。

V-ing 之前的 be 动词可译成“是”时，该 V-ing 就是动名词。

His job is washing cars.

（他的工作正在洗车。）(×)

（他的工作就是洗车。）(✓)

由上得知，本句中的 washing 非现在分词，而是动名词，置于 be 动词之后，作表语。

方法 2：

若同学们觉得方法 1 有点难时，可试试这个方法：

be 动词之后的 V-ing 可与主语互换时，该 V-ing 就是动名词；若不能互换时就是现在分词。

例: He is washing the car.

（他在洗车。）

→ Washing the car is he. (×)

（洗车子就是他。）

故本句中的 washing 为现在分词。

例: His job is washing cars.

（他的工作是洗车。）

→ Washing cars is his job. (✓)

（洗车是他的工作。）

故本句中的 washing 是动名词，具有名词的功能，既可作表语，亦可作主语。

b. become（变成）

become 可用任何名词、形容词或可作形容词用的现在分词或过去分词（即可以译成“……的”之类的分词）作表语。

例: He became angry.

形容词

（他生气了。）

You'll become a good student if you study hard.

名词

（如果你用功，就可成为好学生。）

He seems to be a nice man.

名词

= He seems a nice man.

（他似乎是个好人。）

f. 感官动词

感官动词一共有五个，一律译成“……起来”，之后一律用形容词（或可作形容词用的分词）作表语。

look	（看起来）	+ 形容词
sound	（听起来）	
smell	（闻起来）	
taste	（尝起来）	
feel	（感觉起来，感到）	

例: His idea sounds good.

形容词

（他的主意听起来不错。）

The food smells good.

形容词

（这食物闻起来很香。）

I feel tired now.

形容词

（我现在觉得很疲倦。）

It looks interesting.

形容词

（它看起来很有趣。）

注意:

1) 感官动词后绝不可用名词作表语，若要与名词连用时，须采用下列句型：

look	+ like + 名词
sound	介词
smell	
taste	
feel	

*like 为介词，译成“像”，之后的名词为其宾语。

例: It sounds a good idea. (×)

→ It sounds like a good idea. (√)

（听起来像是个好主意。）

Provisions ran short.

形容词

（粮食不足了。）

I don't know how he came to be so popular.

（我不知道他怎么会变得如此受人欢迎。）

*此处 came to be 相当于 gradually became（渐渐变成）。

The document proved to be a forgery.

（这份文件证实是伪造的。）

12. 完全及物动词：

稍早赖老师提到，完全及物动词就是加了宾语后意思很完全的动词，有主动及被动两个语态。在此，我们要与大家讨论主动语态。至于被动语态，我们则将在语态的专篇中再讨论。

完全及物动词在主动语态中，用法极为简单，句型如下：

主语 + 完全及物动词 + 宾语（object，简称 o.）

例：Peter loves music.

S　vt.　o.

（彼得喜爱音乐。）

They want to go dancing.

S　vt.　o.

（他们想去跳舞。）

He thinks that the book is good.

S　vt.　o.

（他认为这本书很好。）

13. 完全及物动词的用法：

完全及物动词的宾语，计有名词、代词、不定式、动名词、名词性从句及名词短语等。同学们稍加注意，就可发现这些词类、短语或从句均有名词的特性，故亦可用作主语。

a. 名词当及物动词的宾语

例：He didn't buy that car.

vt.　o.

（他没有买那部车。）

b. 代词当及物动词的宾语

例：I don't like John. In fact, I hate him.

vt.　o.

（我不喜欢约翰。事实上，我讨厌他。）

c. 不定式当及物动词的宾语

这些动词皆有表示某种愿望、企图之意，常用的此类动词如：want（想要）、hope（希望）、desire（想要）等。

例: I want to see him now.

vt. o.

（我现在就要见他。）

I hope to study abroad someday.

vt. o.

（我希望有一天能出国留学。）

d. 动名词当及物动词的宾语

并非所有及物动词均可用动名词作宾语。常以动名词作宾语的动词有下列几个：

例: He **considered** studying abroad.

vt. o.

（他考虑出国念书。）

I once **imagined** going on a date with him.

vt. o.

（我曾想象和他去约会。）

I just can't **fancy** getting along with them.

vt. o.

（我无法想象我会和他们相处得来。）

He **risked** doing it.

vt. o.

（他冒险做这事。）

I **avoided** seeing him again.

vt. o.

（我避免再见到他。）

He **escaped** being killed in the accident.

vt. o.

（他在那次意外中幸免于难。）

They **suggested** putting off the game.

vt. o.

（他们建议将比赛延期。）

He **recommended** traveling abroad.

vt. o.

（他建议去国外旅行。）

例: He **stopped writing** after he got married.
（他结婚后就不再写作了。）

He decided to **quit smoking**.
（他决定戒烟。）

They **ceased** | **to work** / **working** | at exactly 5:00 p.m.
（他们下午 5 点整停工。）

> **注意**
> stop to V　　停下来而去……

例: He **stopped to talk** to me when he saw me.
= He **stopped** (what he was doing) **to talk** to me when he saw me.
（他看见我时，便停下来和我说话。）

4) **continue**（继续）、**start**（开始）、**begin**（开始）、**like**（喜欢）、**love**（爱）、**hate**（恨），可用不定式或动名词作宾语，意思不变。

例: He continued | **trying** / **to try** | his luck at the casino.
（他继续在赌场里试他的手气。）

They started | **building** / **to build** | the house.
（他们开始建这栋房子。）

I | **like** / **love** / **hate** | **listening** / **to listen** | to music.
（我喜欢/爱/厌恶听音乐。）

e. 名词性从句当及物动词的宾语

稍早我们已为同学们介绍名词性从句的形成方式、种类及其功能，再提醒一下，名词性从句有三种：

1) that 引导的名词性从句
that he can't do it　　（他不能做此事）

2) whether 引导的名词性从句
whether he will come　　（他是否会来）

14. 不完全及物动词：

不完全及物动词（incomplete transitive verb）仍属一种及物动词，但此类动词加了宾语之后，意思并不完全，需要加补语（complement），以补充意思之不足。

兹以 make 为例：

a. make 作“制造”或“做”解时，为完全及物动词。

例：He made a kite. (✓)
完全vt. o.
（他做了一个风筝。）
＊本句意思完整，故无需补语。

b. 但 make 若作“使”或“叫”解时，则为不完全及物动词。

例：He made Mary. (×)
不完全vt. o.
（他使玛丽。）
＊本句意思不完全，故需补语。

He made Mary happy. (✓)
不完全vt. o. o.c.
（他使玛丽快乐。）
＊happy 为形容词，此处作宾语补语，使整句完整。

＊o.c. 是 objective complement 的缩写，表“宾语补语”。“表语”则称作 subjective complement，简写成 s.c.。

例：He made Mary. (×)
不完全vt. o.
（他叫玛丽。）
＊本句意思不完整（未说明“他叫玛丽如何”），故需补语。

He made Mary clean the window. (✓)
不完全vt. o. o.c.
（他叫玛丽擦窗户。）
＊clean 为原形动词，连同 the window 一起作宾语补语，使句意完全。

15. 不完全及物动词的分类及用法：

不完全及物动词使用起来稍嫌复杂。为了方便同学们记忆，赖老师特别加以分类，叙述如下，希望同学们一定要牢记：

a. 使役动词

1) 叫……

| make
have | + 宾语 + 原形动词（作补语） |

例：I made him wash the car.
o. o.c.
（我叫他洗车。）

I had John report to me.

o. o.c.

（我叫约翰向我报到。）

注意:

a) get 亦可表“叫……”之意，但只能用不定式短语作宾语补语，句型如下：
get sb to V 叫某人从事……

例:I got him to wash the car. (✓)

o. o.c.

（我叫他洗车。）

I got him wash the car. (×)

o. o.c.

b) make 可使用于被动语态中，但 have 及 get 则不可。

主动语态：

例:I | made / had | him wash the car.

vt. o. o.c.

= I got him to wash the car.

vt. o. o.c.

（我叫他洗车。）

上列第一句的 wash the car 及第二句的 to wash the car 均修饰宾语 him，故为宾语补语。

被动语态：

例:He was made to wash the car.

S s.c.

（他被要求洗车——也照做了。）

变被动语态时，原形动词 wash 就要变成不定式短语 to wash，而成 to wash the car。

例:He was | had / got | to wash the car. (×)

*have、get 无被动用法。

2) 让……

此时使用 let，句型如下：

a) let + 宾语 + 原形动词（作宾语补语）

例:I let him wash the car.

o.　o.c.

（我让他洗车。）

I let Peter try it.

o.　o.c.

（我让彼得试试看。）

b) let + 宾语 + 作副词用的介词（in、out、down）

例:He let me in.

o.　o.c.

（他让我进来。）

Don't let him out.

o.　o.c.

（别让他出去。）

His performance let me down.

o.　o.c.

（他的表演令我失望。）

注意:

(1) 上述介词由于其后无宾语，可单独存在作副词用，因此称为介副词。与地点副词（如 there、here、home）一样，介副词可作 be 动词之后的表语。

例: He is in. (介副词)
（他在家。）

He is out. (介副词)
（他出去了。）

He is there. (地点副词)
（他在那里。）

He is here. (地点副词)
（他在这里。）

He is home. (地点副词)
（他在家里。）

He is downtown. (地点副词)
（他在城里。）

c) 表被动状态时，要用过去分词作补语，译成"……被……。"

例:I saw him killed.
o. o.c.
（我看见他被杀死了。）

I heard the door closed.
o. o.c.
（我听见门被关起来了。）

I felt myself lifted.
o. o.c.
（我感觉到自己被举起来了。）

注意
以上三种补语变被动语态时，除原形动词要变成不定式短语之外，其余不变。

例:I saw him do it.
→ He was seen to do it.
（我看见他做那件事。）

I saw him dancing.
→ He was seen dancing.
（我看见他正在跳舞。）

I saw the dog run over by a car.
→ The dog was seen run over by a car.
（我看见那只狗被车辗过。）

C. 任命动词

此类动词多表"选举"、"指派"之意，其宾语之后接表职位的名词作补语，通常该名词之前要省略冠词。此类动词常用的有：

elect（选举）、assign（指派）、appoint（任命）。

例: We elected him chairman of the committee.
o. o.c.
（我们选他为委员会主席。）

The colonel assigned him platoon leader.
o. o.c.
（上校指派他为排长。）

*小宝宝（baby）因为头发稀疏兜着尿片，看不出是男是女，故用代词 it、itself 代替。若已知小宝宝的性别，当然就可使用 he、himself、him、she、her、herself 等代词了。

His assistance will render (= make) success certain.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (adj.)

（他的协助将使成功在握。）

The misfortune nearly drove him mad.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (adj.)

（那次不幸的遭遇几乎使他发疯。）

They named the baby Tom.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (n.)

（他们给小宝宝取名为汤姆。）

They call him a liar.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (n.)

（他们叫他骗子。）

Don't leave the door open.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (adj.)

（别让门敞开着。）

You must keep your teeth clean.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (adj.)

（你一定要让你的牙齿保持干净。）

I want the job done no later than five.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (过去分词作形容词用)

（我要这项工作在 5 点以前做完。）

Help me (to) find my watch.

不完全vt. o. o.c. (不定式短语作宾语补语)

（帮我找我的表。）

*help 之后接了宾语，再以不定式短语作宾语补语时，to 可予省略。

16. 授予动词：

授予动词（dative verb，简写成 d.v.）为及物动词的一种，只是接两个宾语。第一个宾语叫做间接宾语（indirect object，简写成 i.o.），表授予的对象；第二个宾语叫直接宾语（direct object，简写成 d.o.），表授予的东西。

例: I will give you this watch.

d.v. i.o. d.o.

（我要送你这块表。）

Please lend me your book.

d.v. i.o. d.o.

（请把你的书借我。）

I bought him a car.

d.v. i.o. d.o.

（我买了辆车给他。）

I asked him a question.

d.v. i.o. d.o.

（我问了他一个问题。）

以上结构中，you、me、him 均为间接宾语，this watch、your book、a car、a question 均为直接宾语。然而同学们一定会问，为何要做如此分类呢？赖老师这样告诉你：拿第一句来说吧，中文译为："我要送你这块表。"说这句话的人，手中一定先拿着表，然后再送给对方。故 this watch 先被接触，称为直接宾语，而 you 则后被接触，称为间接宾语。我们再以第四句加以说明。本句译为："我问了他一个问题。"我们想一想：与"我"先接触的是"问题"，因为"我"一张口，"问题"就借着声音跑了出来，然后才传达给"他"。故 a question 为直接宾语，而 him 则为间接宾语。

17. 间接宾语与直接宾语倒置原则：

若间接宾语与直接宾语位置颠倒时，就需要另加介词 to、for 或 of。

a. 表"给予"的概念，要用 to。

例: I gave him the book.

= I gave the book to him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我给他这本书。）

I sent him the letter.

= I sent the letter to him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我寄这封信给他。）

I told him the story.

= I told the story to him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我讲这个故事给他听。）

I teach them English.

= I teach English to them.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我教他们英语。）

b. 表“代劳”的概念，要用 for。

例: I bought him the book.

= I bought the book for him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我为他买了这本书。）

> **理由**
> “我”到书店为他买本书，因此“我”出了劳力。

例: I made him a chair.

= I made a chair for him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我替他做了一把椅子。）

> **理由**
> “我”出了劳力制做一把椅子，故介词要用 for 表示为他代劳之意。

c. 表“从……中”的概念，要用 of。

例: I asked him a question.

= I asked a question of him.

d.o. prep. i.o.

（我问他一个问题。）

> **理由**
> 此处的 of，等于 from 之意，但使用时，仍以 of 为宜。凡表“要求”的动词均属此用法 。

例: I didn't expect much of him.

d.o. i.o.

（我对他不抱很大的期望。）

He required nothing of me.

d.o. i.o.

（他对我毫无所求。）

He demanded little of me.

d.o. i.o.

（他对我几乎无所求。）

只是使用此三个动词时，不得像 ask 一样，可将间接宾语置于前面。

例: I didn't expect him much. (×)
i.o. d.o.

He required me nothing. (×)
i.o. d.o.

He demanded me little. (×)
i.o. d.o.

18. 与 of 连用的授予动词:

下列动词亦与 of 连用，但是与上述不同的是，of 之后是以表“东西”的名词为宾语，而非以表“对象”的名词为宾语，同学们务必牢记。

a. rob　抢夺

例: He robbed my money. (×)

→ He robbed me of my money. (√)
对象　东西

（他抢了我的钱。）

My money was robbed. (×)

→ I was robbed of my money. (√)

（我的钱被抢了。）

b. deprive　剥夺（权利）

例: The court deprived all his civil rights. (×)

→ The court deprived him of all his civil rights. (√)
对象　东西

（法院剥夺了他的公民权利。）

All his civil rights were | deprived. / stripped. | (×)

→ He was | deprived / stripped | of all his civil rights. (√)

（他被剥夺了公民权利。）

c. relieve　解除（职务、指挥权等）

例: The captain relieved the platoon leader of his command.

（连长解除了排长的指挥权。）

d. rid　　解除，摆脱

例: I cannot rid myself of the painful memory.

= I cannot get rid of the painful memory.

（我无法摆脱这段痛苦的回忆。）

> **注意**
> rid 三态同形。rid myself of 中的 rid 是动词，表“使脱离”；get rid of 中的 rid 是过去分词，相当于形容词，表“脱离的”，get 相当于 be，但 get rid of（摆脱）表“动作”，而 be rid of（已摆脱）则表“状态”。

比较:

I'll get rid of those chores.

（我要摆脱那些杂务。）

I'm glad to be rid of those chores.

（我很高兴摆脱了那些杂务。）

e. break　　戒除

例: You should	break rid	yourself of the bad habit of smoking.

（你应该戒除抽烟的恶习。）

不过上句亦可写成：

You should break the bad habit of smoking.

f. cure　　治愈

例: The doctor cured him of his disease.

（医生治好了他的病。）

不过上句亦可写成：

The doctor cured his disease.

19. 表“提供”的授予动词：

常用的此类动词有 offer、provide、supply、furnish、present 等。除 offer 以外，其余要与介词 with 连用。

例: He offered me all I needed.

　　　　　　　　i.o.　d.o.

= He	provided supplied furnished	me with all I needed.

（他提供我所需要的东西。）

He | provided / supplied / furnished | me all I needed. (×)

注意:

a. He offered me all I needed.
= He offered all I needed to me.
He provided me with all I needed.
= He provided all I needed for me.

b. offer 除表“提供”外，亦表“愿意、主动提议”，此时接不定式短语作宾语，句型如下：
offer to V　　愿意……
= be willing to V
例: After he heard of my situation, he offered to help me.
（当他听说我的情形后，便自愿帮助我。）

c. present（赠予）的用法与 provide 相似，不同的是将间接宾语置于句尾时，要与介词 to 连用。
例: He presented me with a watch.
(me = i.o.; a watch = d.o.)
= He presented a watch to me.
(a watch = d.o.; me = i.o.)
（他送我一块表。）

20. 其他补充要点：

a. 在第 16 项中，我们已为同学们介绍过，表“给予”的概念，要与 to 连用。
例: I gave him a book.
= I gave a book to him.
（我给他一本书。）
I wrote him a letter.
= I wrote a letter to him.
（我写了一封信给他。）

但：explain（解释）、introduce（介绍）、propose（提议）、recommend（建议）、express（表示）等动词，不论间接或直接宾语的位置是否颠倒，均要与 to 连用。

第三节　结　论

1. 五大句型：

从动词的分类我们已得知，动词一共有五种：

a. 完全不及物动词

b. 不完全不及物动词

c. 完全及物动词

d. 不完全及物动词

e. 授予动词

再根据此五类动词，演绎成英语的五大类句型：

第一句型：

主语 + 完全不及物动词

例：He fainted.
完全 vi.
（他昏倒了。）

He slept.
完全 vi.
（他睡觉了。）

He went away.
完全 vi. adv.
（他离开了。）

He went to the station.
完全 vi. 介词短语作 adv.
（他去车站了。）

第二句型：

主语 + 不完全不及物动词 + 表语

例：He is good.
不完全 vi. adj. 作表语
（他人很好。）

He looks happy.
不完全 vi. adj. 作表语
（他看起来很愉快。）

第三句型：

主语 + 完全及物动词 + 宾语

例: He ate it.
完全 vt. o.
（他吃了它。）

He wants to do it.
完全 vt. 不定式短语，作“意愿”动词的宾语
（他要做此事。）

He knows that he is wrong.
完全 vt. 名词性从句作宾语
（他知道他错了。）

I wonder when he'll come.
完全 vt. 名词性从句作宾语
（我不知道他何时会来。）

They enjoy dancing.
完全 vt. 动名词作宾语
（他们喜爱跳舞。）

I don't know how to do it.
完全 vt. 名词短语作宾语
（我不知道如何做此事。）

第四句型：
主语 + 不完全及物动词 + 宾语 + 宾语补语

例: He made me happy.
不完全 vt. o. 形容词作宾语补语
（他使我觉得愉快。）

We elected him chairman.
不完全 vt. o. 名词作宾语补语
（我们选他当主席。）

第五句型：
主语 + 授予动词 + 间接宾语（授予对象）+ 直接宾语（被授予的东西）

例: I gave him a book.
授予 vt. 间接宾语 直接宾语
= I gave a book to him.
（我给他一本书。）

I told him a lie.
授予 vt. 间接宾语 直接宾语
= I told a lie to him.
（我对他说了个谎。）

2. 祈使句、感叹句、问句：

以上所列五大句型的示范例句均为陈述句，亦是常见的句子。除了陈述句外，尚有祈使句、感叹句、问句三类。但不论形态如何改变，绝不超出此五大句型。兹将此三类句型介绍如下：

a. 祈使句

简单地说，祈使句就是把主语 You 及助动词 should 或 must 省略的句子。此类句型一开头即为原形动词，亦由上列五大句型演变而成。句尾可视语气强弱置感叹号或句号。

第一句型：

肯定型：You must run now.
　　　　　　　　完全vi.

→ Run!
（跑！）

否定型：Don't run!
（别跑！）

第二句型：

肯定型：You must be　quiet now.
　　　　　　　　不完全vi. 表语

→ Be quiet!
（安静！）

否定型：Don't be quiet!
（别不吭声！）

第三句型：

肯定型：You must open the door now.
　　　　　　　　完全 vt.　o.

→ Open the door.
（开门。）

否定型：Don't open the door.
（别开门。）

第四句型：

肯定型：You must make　him do it.
　　　　　　　　不完全 vt. o.　o.c.

→ Make him do it.
（叫他做这事。）

否定型：Don't make him do it.
（别叫他做这事。）

第五句型：

肯定型：You must send him a letter.
授予 vt. 间接宾语 直接宾语

→ Send him a letter.
（寄封信给他。）

否定型：Don't send him any letters.
（别寄任何信给他。）

注意
否定型的祈使句一共有两种：一为 Don't 起首，另一为 Never（绝不）起首。使用 Never 时，不必加 Do，即无 Do never 的用法。

例: Never try it. (✓)
Do never try it. (×)
但: Don't ever try it. (✓)
= Never try it.
（绝对不要去试。）

b. 感叹句

感叹句的形成，均由 How 或 What 引导。句型如下：

1) What + n. + 主语 + 动词……！

例: What a great man he is!
（他是个多伟大的人呀！）

由于此处 What 为形容词，译成“多么的”，之后一定要加名词，以供修饰。造句的方法如下：

第一步：先置 What 于句首，即成：
What...

第二步：再将含有名词作及物动词的宾语、表语或作补语的句子置于其后；

a) 名词作及物动词的宾语：
What he has a beautiful car.
vt. o.

b) 名词作表语：
(1) be 动词的表语
What he is a great man.
be 动词 表语

(2) 宾语补语

What you have made him a good boy.

不完全vt.　o.　宾语补语

第三步：将此宾语、表语或补语置于 What 之后，句尾再置感叹号即成。

What he has a beautiful car. (×)

o.

→ What a beautiful car he has! (✓)

（他的车多漂亮呀！）

What he is a great man. (×)

表语

→ What a great man he is! (✓)

（他是个多么伟大的人呀！）

What you have made him a good boy. (×)

宾语补语

→ What a good boy you have made him! (✓)

（你使他变成多么好的一个男孩呀！）

2) How + adj. 或 adv. + 主语 + 动词……！

由于此处 How 为副词，译成"多么地"，之后一定要加形容词或副词，以供修饰。造句的方法如下：

第一步：先置 how 于句首，改成大写；

How...

第二步：在 How 之后造一个含有形容词或副词的句子；

How he is great.

adj.

How he studied hard.

adv.

第三步：再将形容词或副词置于 How 之后，句尾添加感叹号即成。

How he is great. (×)

adj.

→ How great he is! (✓)

（他真了不起呀！）

How he studied hard. (×)

adv.

→ How hard he studied! (✓)

（他多用功啊！）

注意

How 之后亦可置带有形容词修饰的单数可数名词，但绝不可置复数名词或不可数名词。句型如下：

How + adj. + a（n）+ 单数名词 + 主语 + 动词……！

例: How a great man he is! (×，great 应置于 How 之后)

How great a man he is! (√)

= What a great man he is! (√)

（他是个多么伟大的人呀！）

换言之，How 之后仅可与单数名词连用；而 What 则可与单数、复数或不可数名词连用。

例: How great men they are! (×，men 是复数名词)

→ What great men they are! (√)

（他们真是了不起的人啊！）

How good music it is! (×，music 是不可数名词)

→ What good music it is! (√)

（这音乐真棒！）

但 how 之后可接 many、much、little、few 之类的数量形容词，再接复数或不可数名词。

例: How many students there are in the classroom! (√)

（那个教室里的学生真多啊！）

How few friends he has! (√)

（他的朋友真少！）

What many students there are in the classroom! (×)

What few friends he has! (×)

How much money he has made! (√)

（他赚了那么多钱！）

How little time is left! (√)

（没剩下多少时间了！）

What much money he has made! (×)

What little time is left! (×)

C. 问句

问句一共有两类：一为一般疑问句，一为特殊疑问句。

25. Judy found <u>her</u> difficult <u>to make</u> <u>herself</u> <u>understood</u>.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

26. <u>Just</u> as I <u>finished</u> eating, my brother <u>explained me</u> a <u>question</u>.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

27. The computer <u>makes</u> <u>possibly</u> <u>a</u> phenomenal leap <u>in human proficiency</u>.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

28. A person <u>ought not to</u> forget to use tact <u>and</u> courtesy <u>in</u> dealing with others, if
(A) (B) (C)
he expects <u>them like him and be</u> his friends.
(D)

29. The students <u>in the dormitories</u> were forbidden, <u>unless</u> they had
(A) (B)
<u>special passes</u>, <u>from staying</u> out after 11:30 p.m.
(C) (D)

30. Because he could not think <u>clearer</u>, his efforts <u>in trying</u> <u>to solve</u> the problem
(A) (B) (C)
<u>failed</u>.
(D)

标准答案

1. (E) 2. (C) 3. (A) 4. (E) 5. (C) 6. (D) 7. (B) 8. (C) 9. (B) 10. (A)

11. (B) 12. (D) 13. (A) 14. (C) 15. (A) 16. (D) 17. (A) 18. (B) 19. (B) 20. (A)

21. (A) 22. (A) 23. (D) 24. (C) 25. (A) 26. (C) 27. (B) 28. (D) 29. (D) 30. (A)

习题解说

1. sold（sell 的过去式）

可作授予动词，与介词 to 连用。

2. hung（挂）（hang 的过去式）
   为完全及物动词，此处的 on the rack 作副词用，修饰 hung。
3. fell（落下）（fall 的过去式）
   为完全不及物动词；in torrents 作副词用，修饰 fell。
4. show 可作授予动词，本句中的 the guests 及 the way 均为其宾语。
5. 与第 2 题同理。
6. make 为使役动词，此处以过去分词 complicated 作其宾语补语。
7. prove 可作不完全不及物动词，表“经证实为……”，此处的 eligible（合格的）为表语。
8. feel 作完全及物动词时，表“触摸”。
9. feel 作不完全不及物动词时，表“感觉起来……”。
10. 此处 do 为完全不及物动词，表“进展”。
11. a. taste 之后须接形容词作表语，表“尝起来……”。
    b. taste of...　尝起来有……的味道
    taste of garlic　有蒜味
    taste of fish　有鱼味
12. upstairs（楼上）为地点副词可作表语，故之前无须再加介词。
13. measure 可作不完全不及物动词，其后接表距离的名词，意思是“量起来有……长”。
14. sleep 作及物动词时，其宾语必须为同系宾语 sleep。
15. have 为使役动词，其宾语之后须以原形动词作宾语补语。
16. that 从句是名词性从句，被句首的 It 代替。
17. each state 为本句的主语，is represented 则为被动语态的动词，regardless of population 是插入的形容词短语，修饰主语。
18. white 为形容词，此处作表语。
19. wear long hair　留长发
    wear short hair　留短发
20. look upon A as B　将 A 视为 B
21. feel 为感官动词，故之后应置形容词 bad 作表语。
22. 本句的主语为 Bats，但缺少动词，故将 deterministic 改为 determine。
23. (D) 应删除 to be，保留形容词 instinctive。call 表“称作”，是不完全及物动词，应以形容词或名词作补语。

They call me stupid.（他们叫我呆子。）
adj.
They call me a liar.（他们叫我骗子。）
n.

24. take 表示“带走”，表“带来”要用 bring。
25. 本句中 found 的真正宾语为 to make herself understood，difficult 为宾语补语，故 (A) 中的 her 应改为形式宾语 it。
26. explain 作授予动词时，间接宾语无论位置如何，之前均须加介词 to，故 (C) 应改为 explained to me。
    explain to 人 + 事　　向某人解释某事
  = explain 事 + to 人
27. (B) 中的 possibly 应改为 possible。
    make...possible　　使……成为可能
    possible 为 make 的宾语补语，原本应置于宾语之后，但因宾语过长，故将 possible 移至宾语之前，以美化句子。
28. expect 表“期望”，用“expect sb to V”（期望某人……），故 (D) 应改为 them to like him and (to) be。
29. forbid sb to V　　禁止某人从事……
    forbid 的宾语补语必须为不定式，不可用 from V-ing，故 (D) 中的 from staying 应改为 to stay。
30. think 在此处为完全不及物动词，必须用副词修饰，故 clearer 须改为 clearly。

A Quick Note

第五种：副词连词

例: He deserves our respect because he is honest.
（他值得我们尊敬，因为他诚实。）

第六种：关系词

例: He is a man who never tells lies.
（他是个从不说谎的人。）

由于这些连接符号或连词牵涉甚广，我们必须逐项讨论于后。

第一节　连接符号

通常用来连接两句的标点符号只有三个，即破折号（—）、冒号（:）、分号（;）。兹将此类连接符号介绍如下：

1. 破折号：

a. 此类符号有别于连字符（-）。前者用于连接句子或同位语，而后者则用以连接单词，形成复合词。

例：连字符：

Water-skiing is my hobby.

单词　单词

（滑水是我的爱好。）

The tiger is a man-eating animal.

单词　单词

（老虎是一种会吃人的动物。）

b. 破折号连接句子时，用来强调第一个句子，以补充意思的不足。此时破折号有“也就是说”，或“换句话说”的意思。

例：He is trash—he is good for nothing.

（他是废物——他什么都不行。）

= He is trash. That is to say, he is good for nothing.

（他是废物。换句话说，他什么都不行。）

*trash 原意为“垃圾”，是集合名词，不可数，故其前不置冠词 a。

c. 破折号亦可用来连接同位语。

例：He finally made his purpose known to us—to chase Susan.

不定式短语，作同位语

（他终于让我们知道了他的目的——追求苏珊。）

His hobby—taking pictures—is far more interesting than mine.

动名词短语，作同位语

（他的爱好——摄影——比我的爱好有趣多了。）

置入插入语之后：

He enjoys dancing, <u>which is his hobby</u>; swimming,

插入语

<u>which he often does on Sundays</u>; and jogging.

插入语

（他喜欢跳舞，那是他的爱好；也喜欢去游泳，而且周日常去；还喜欢慢跑。）

第二节　并列连词

1. 单一连词：

基本的并列连词一共只有三个：and、or、but。此种连词可用以连接对等的单词，短语或句子，故称为并列连词。

a. 单词

例：He and I enjoy singing.

对等的主语

（他和我都喜欢唱歌。）

He is kind and handsome.

对等的形容词作表语

（他心地好，人又帅。）

Is he sad or happy?

对等的形容词作表语

（他是伤心还是高兴？）

He doesn't like her but hates her.

对等的动词

（他不是喜欢她，而是恨她。）

b. 短语

例：I came to see him and (to) tell him the truth.

对等的不定式短语

（我来是要见他并告诉他实情。）

Does he work in Taipei or in Shanghai?

对等的介词短语

（他是在台北还是在上海工作？）

He is not good at English but poor at it.

对等的形容词短语作表语

（他英语不是很好，而是很差。）

c. 句子

例：He works hard, and his father is proud of him.

对等的分句

（他很努力，而他父亲以他为荣。）

（“not only...but also...”连接对等的不定式短语）

He succeeded both because of his intelligence and because of his hard work.

（他成功既因他的聪明，亦因他的努力。）

（“both...and...”连接对等的副词短语）

c. 句子

例: He succeeded both because he was intelligent and because he worked hard.

（他成功既因为他聪明，亦因他努力。）

（“both...and...”连接对等的状语从句）

Not only can she sing, but she can (also) dance.

（她不仅会唱歌，她也会跳舞。）

（“Not only...but (also)...”连接对等的分句）

3. as well as 与 rather than 作并列连词:

下列连词亦视为并列连词，可连接对等的单词、短语或句子。

as well as...　以及……

rather than...　而非……

a. 单词

例: We as well as John like it.

对等的主语

（我们和约翰都喜欢它。）

He is happy rather than sad.

对等的形容词

（他很快乐，而不是伤心。）

b. 短语

例: He is interested in music rather than in painting.

（他对音乐有兴趣，而非对绘画有兴趣。）

（rather than 连接对等的介词短语）

He came here to learn English as well as to know more about life.

（他来此地学英语并了解更多有关生活的事情。）

（as well as 连接对等的不定式短语）

Either he or I am wrong.
（不是他就是我错。）

Neither you nor he is to blame.
（既不是你也不是他该负责。）

*be to blame = should be responsible　　应负责

Not he but I am to be responsible for it.
（不是他而是我应对此事负责。）

Not only they but (also) John has passed the exam.
（不仅他们考试及格，连约翰也考及格了。）

b. both...and... / neither...nor... / not...but...等三组连词通常不用来连接句子，而"not only...but also..."则可用来连接句子，唯 not only 引导的句子要采用倒装结构。赖老师相信此刻同学们又不知所云了。没关系，请你耐心看下面的解说，就会明白了。

1) 句子是可以单独存在的，两个句子可以通过连词形成并列句，也可以与状语从句、定语从句并存形成主从复合句。

例：He is good.　　句子
主语

John seems to like it.　　句子
主语

Peter is a man who never lies. (句子)
主句　　定语从句

He said that he liked it.
主语　vt.　名词性从句作宾语

When he came, I was studying.
状语从句　　主句

2) Both he is good at English, and he is good at math. (×)
分句　　分句

→ He is good at both English and math. (√)
（他擅长英语和数学。）

Either you should listen to me, or you should get out of my sight. (可)
分句　　分句

= You should either listen to me or get out of my sight. (佳)
动词短语　　动词短语

（你要不就听我的话，要不就给我滚。）

Neither you can talk here, nor you can eat here. (×)
分句　　　　分句

You can neither talk nor eat here. (✓)
（你不可在这儿说话，也不可在这儿吃东西。）

Not he is wrong, but you are wrong. (可)
分句　　　　分句

→ Not he but you are wrong. (佳)
（错不在他，而在你。）

但:Not only can she sing, but she can also dance. (✓)
分句　　　　分句

c. not only 由于是否定副词的关系，若置于第一个分句之前，该主句要采用倒装结构。而 but also 则为连词，所连接的第二个分句不须倒装。倒装原则依动词形式之不同，可分为下列三种情况：

1) **be 动词与主语倒装：**

例: Not only he is clever, but he is (also) polite. (×)
→ Not only is he clever, but he is polite. (✓)
（他不仅聪明而且有礼貌。）

2) **助动词与主语倒装：**

例: Not only she can sing, but she can (also) dance. (×)
→ Not only can she sing, but she can dance. (✓)
（她不但能唱歌而且能跳舞。）

Not only he has learned a lot from his teacher, but he has (also) done quite well in his studies. (×)
→ Not only has he learned a lot from his teacher, but he has done quite well in his studies. (✓)
（他不仅从老师那儿学到很多，而且他的学习也很优异。）

3) **一般动词：**

倒装时要按主语人称与动词时态另加 do、does 或 did 于主语前，原有的动词一律改为原形动词。

例: Not only she sings well, but she (also) dances beautifully. (×)
→ Not only does she sing well, but she dances beautifully. (✓)
（她不仅歌唱得好，舞也跳得好。）

第三节 副词连词

在主从复合句中，because、if 等连词引导的从句充当状语，类似副词的功能，所以我们把这类连词叫做副词连词。

1. 副词连词只能连接从句：

例：I like him because he is easy to get along with.
（我喜欢他是因为他很容易相处。）

When he came, I was writing a letter.
（当他来时，我正在写信。）

上列句中，because 及 when 就是副词连词，用以连接主句和从句。

2. 常用的的副词连词：

because（因为）、though（虽然）、if（如果）、unless（除非）、as soon as（一旦）、once（一旦）等。

3. 副词连词引导状语从句：

副词连词冠于任何一个从句前面，该从句就成为状语从句，而状语从句绝不可能单独存在，一定要与主句共存。整个状语从句可视为副词，用来修饰主句。

例：He is nice. 句子
because he is nice 状语从句
I like him. Because he is nice. (×)

理由

because he is nice 乃状语从句，不可单独存在。

兹改正如下：

I like him because he is nice. (✓)
主句 状语从句

或：

Because he is nice, I like him. (✓)
状语从句 主句

4. 状语从句的位置：

同学们应注意到，在上列改正过的结构中，because 引导的状语从句若置于主句之后，because 之前就不必加逗号。但 because 从句若置于主句之前，则两句之间就应置逗号。由此我们得知一个惯用的法则：任何一个副词连词所引导的从句若置于主句之后，两句之间通常不置逗号。但若该状语从句置于主句之前，则两句之间通常置逗号。

例：Though he did poorly on the test, his father didn't scold him.
状语从句 主句

故：

例:

Though Although Even if Even though	she is nice, I don't like her. (✓)

或: She is nice, but I don't like her. (✓)
（她人很好，但我不喜欢她。）

6. 条件句与主句的时态：

when（当）、if（如果）、once（一旦）、as soon as（一旦 = once）、unless（除非）等副词连词所引导的从句，亦可表示一种条件，形成所谓的条件句。若用来表示将来的状况时，该条件句的时态要采用一般现在时（或现在完成时），而主句的时态则用一般将来时。即：

If Once As soon as Unless When	+ 一般现在时（或现在完成时）动词, 主语 + will + 原形动词

例: When I will be rich, I will buy a car. (×)
→ When I am rich, I will buy a car. (✓)
（我有钱时，就会买辆车。）

If he will have time, he'll come here. (×)
→ If he has time, he'll come here. (✓)
（他若有时间就会来。）

As soon as I will have done it, I'll let you know. (×)
→ As soon as I have done it, I'll let you know. (✓)
（我一做完就会让你知道。）

Once I will be free, I will take a trip abroad. (×)
→ Once I am free, I will take a trip abroad. (✓)
（我一旦有空就会出国旅行。）

Unless he will come back tomorrow, I will leave. (×)
→ Unless he comes back tomorrow, I will leave. (✓)
（除非他明天回来，否则我就要走了。）

同理:

It will be another two years before he will graduate. (×)

注意

therefore 之后通常要加逗号，thus 则不加逗号。
therefore 亦可插入在句中，两旁以逗号相隔。

例: He is kind; we, therefore, like him.
= He is kind. We, therefore, like him.

c. moreover、furthermore、in addition（此外）——有连词 and 的意味。

例:	She dances well;	furthermore, moreover, in addition,	she is good at singing.
=	She dances well.	Furthermore, Moreover, In addition,	she is good at singing.

= She dances well, and she is good at singing.
（她舞跳得好，而且也擅长唱歌。）

d. besides（此外）

besides 与 in addition 均表“此外”，不过前者多用于有否定或消极意味的句中，而 in addition 则用于肯定句或积极意味的句中（如上例）。

例: I don't think I will go to the movies with you, John. I'm too tired; besides, I have no money.
（我想我不会跟你去看电影了，约翰。我太累了；此外，我也没钱。）

注意

furthermore、moreover、besides、in addition 通常只置于主语前，而不插入句中。

8. while 作副词连词及并列连词的用法：

a. 表“当……”时，while 视为副词连词，引导状语从句。

例: While I was writing a letter, she was doing the dishes.
（While I was writing a letter = 状语从句；she was doing the dishes = 主句）
（当我在写信时，她正在洗盘子。）

b. 表“而……”时，while 视为并列连词，连接并列句。

例: He is nice, | while / whereas | his brother is bad.
分句　　　　　　　　分句

= While he is nice, his brother is bad.
分句　　分句

（他很好，而他弟弟却很坏。）

9. 其他重要的副词连词：

a. as（当；虽然；因为）

1) as 作“当”解时，相当于 when 之意。

例: As I was young, I was quite happy.
（我年轻时很快乐。）

2) as 作“虽然”解时，等于 though；though 引导的状语从句有下列句型变化：

例: Though he is rich, he isn't happy.
adj.

= Rich as he is, he isn't happy.
= As rich as he is, he isn't happy.
（虽然他有钱，却并不快乐。）

＊上句句首的 As 视作虚词，无意义，第二个 as 则视为连词，译成“虽然”。

3) as 作“因为”解时，相当于 because 之意。

例 As he has apologized to me, I'm going to forgive him.
= Because he has apologized to me, I'm going to forgive him.
（由于他已向我道歉，因此我会原谅他。）

b. where（= in the place where = in the place in which）（在……的地方）

例: Where I live, people are very nice.
= In the place where I live, people are very nice.
（在我住的地方，大家都很友善。）

Put the book where I can see it.
= Put the book in the place where I can see it.
（把书放在我可以看到的地方。）

g. so...that...（如此……以致于……）

例: He is so nice that we all like him.
（他人这么好，因此我们都很喜欢他。）

注意
英美人士也有人习惯将 that 省略，改以逗号取代，故上句亦可改写成：
He is so nice, we all like him.

h. in that（因为）

in that 相当于 because，只是 in that 引导的状语从句多置于主句之后，而 because 引导的状语从句可置于主句之前或之后。

例: He is great in that he speaks five different languages.
主句
（他很了不起，因为他能说五种语言。）

i. except that（只可惜，只不过是）

例: He is nice except that he is a little shy.
（他人不错，只不过有点儿害羞。）

j. since（因为；自从）

since 表“因为”时，相当于 because 之意；表“自从”时，所引导的状语从句采一般过去时，主句则为现在完成时或现在完成进行时。

例: Since you've finished the work, you may leave anytime.
（由于你工作做完了，因此可以随时离开。）
He has been studying quite hard (ever) since he went to college.
（他自从上大学后，就一直很用功。）

EXERCISE

I. 请选出一个正确的答案：

1. Strike _____ the iron is hot.
   (A) before (B) after (C) while (D) during
2. The chairman introduced the speaker _____ then he left the hall.
   (A) : (B) . (C) , (D) ;
3. We do not necessarily grow wiser _____ we grow older.
   (A) as (B) than (C) that (D) which
4. The lecturer will come, _____ he will send a substitute.
   (A) or (B) and (C) otherwise (D) but
5. I cannot afford a new car _____, I have an old Ford.
   (A) , besides (B) ; besides (C) , beside (D) ; beside
6. I will not accept the position, _____ do I want you to take it.
   (A) neither (B) either (C) nor (D) or
7. You will not be able to keep your appointment _____ you hurry.
   (A) for (B) because (C) unless (D) if
8. Put the manuscript _____ the editor can find it.
   (A) when (B) where (C) which (D) how
9. I do the work _____ he gets the credit!
   (A) then (B) ; (C) for (D) so
10. We were so late _____ we missed the concert.
    (A) that (B) and (C) because (D) before
11. You have broken the law; _____, you must be punished.
    (A) so (B) since (C) therefore (D) because

12. Although he is rich, _____ he is not happy.
(A) × (B) but (C) however (D) because

13. It will not be long _____ I come back.
(A) when (B) after (C) before (D) if

14. You must not waste time _____ life is short.
(A) so (B) though (C) in that (D) because of

15. _____ you insist, I will reconsider the matter.
(A) Since (B) But (C) When (D) For

16. _____ I know, he is very honest.
(A) As soon as (B) As well as (C) As far as (D) As long as

17. _____ to New York, her father has not heard from her.
(A) Because she went (B) After she went
(C) When she went (D) Since she went

18. She is going to buy a hat after she _____ a check.
(A) will cash (B) cashes (C) would cash (D) should cash

19. Go _____ me some ice cream.
(A) for get (B) and get
(C) to getting (D) as well as getting

20. It is _____ day that travel advisories have been issued for most of the major highways.
(A) such snowy (B) so snowy (C) such a snowy (D) such snowy a

21. The concert will _____ commence until the conductor arrives.
(A) soon (B) not (C) immediately (D) now

22. Either you or he _____ wrong.
(A) are (B) am (C) be (D) is

23. The sentence "In spite of his wealth, he is not happy." is equal to "_____"
(A) Rich as he is, he is not happy.
(B) Although he is wealth, he is not happy.
(C) Although he is rich, but he is not happy.
(D) Although he is not happy, but he is rich.

24. Smith wrote his first poem ______.
(A) while he worked a porter in a saloon in New York
(B) while he was working as a porter in a saloon in New York
(C) while worked as a porter in a saloon in New York
(D) while he was worked as a porter in a saloon in New York

25. It is not safe to get out a car ______.
(A) unless it is in motion (B) until it has come to a stop
(C) after you have opened the window (D) before the traffic light turns red

II. 请选出画线部分的错误：

26. Few of the gold seekers who (A) flocked to California were (B) experienced miners, neither (C) did they feel that they had (D) to be.

27. Even although (A) Juan is studying (B) physics now, he is planning to spend (C) next (D) year studying biology and paleontology.

28. John, a (A) versatile young man, is (B) skilled in either (C) drawing and singing (D).

29. Nothing (A) is such hard (B) that (C) it will not become easy by (D) practice.

30. I went (A) to see (B) the zoo during (C) I stayed in Bangkok (D).

第三章　关系词

概说

本章原属于上一章的最后一节，因为关系词也是起连接的作用，但关系词种类繁多，使用时又相当复杂，为让同学们清楚了解关系词的各种用法，赖老师决定另辟本章专讲关系词，以使同学们更加深入了解句子的连接方法。

关系词一共分为下列数种：

a. 关系代词

b. 关系代词所有格

c. 关系副词

d. 关系指示代词

e. 复合关系代词

f. 复合关系副词

g. 准关系代词

以上 a 至 e 项的关系词均引导定语从句，f、g 两项则具有副词的功能，兹分项说明如下页。

第一节 关系代词

1. 关系代词引导定语从句：

关系代词（简称“关代”）有连词的功能，用以引导定语从句。

例：He is a man who always means what he says.

关代 who 引导的定语从句

（他是个说话算话的人。）

That's the book which I like.

关代 which 引导的定语从句

（那是我所喜欢的书。）

He works hard, which is a fact that we all know.

关代 which 引导的定语从句　关代 that（= which）引导的定语从句

（他努力工作是我们都知道的事实。）

在上列三个例句中，赖老师用了关系代词 who、which、that 分别代替人、物或整个句子。

第一例中，who 代替 a man；

第二例中，which 代替 the book；

第三例中，which 代替 He works hard 整个句子，而 that 则等于 which，代替 a fact。

2. 关系代词的种类及其功能：

a. 代替人时，主格用 who（在所引导的定语从句中作主语），宾格用 whom（在所引导的定语从句中作宾语）；

b. 代替事物时，主格或宾格均用 which；

c. 代替整个句子时，主格或宾格均用 which。

请参看下列表格：

关系代词	主格	宾格
代替人	who	whom
代替事物	which	which
代替整个句子	which	which

3. 关系代词使用三原则：

a. 关系代词之前要有先行词（即表人或事物的名词）；

b. 关系代词在所引导的定语从句中要作主语、宾语或表语；

c. 否则关系代词之前一定要有介词。

I like that good book which he bought yesterday.

限制性定语从句

（我喜欢他昨天买的那本好书。）

或: I like that good book, which he bought yesterday.

非限制性定语从句

（我喜欢那本好书，那是他昨天买的。）

我们由上得知，限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句之别，在口语中听不出来，但在书写时就有显著的差异，同学们使用时不可不谨慎，以免闹出笑话。

例: This is my mother who loves me very much. (×)

独一性名词

（这是我那位很爱我的妈妈。——本句暗示还有一位或数位妈妈不是那么爱我。）

→ This is my mother, who loves me very much. (√)

（这是我妈妈，她很爱我。）

He is a man, who never breaks his word. (×)

（他是男人，他从不食言。——本句暗示读者是白痴，分辨不出他是个男人。）

→ He is a man who never breaks his word. (√)

（他是个从不食言的人。）

或: He is a gentleman, who never breaks his word. (√)

名词本身就具有特殊性

（他是个君子，从不食言。）

或: He is a gentleman who never breaks his word. (√)

（他是个从不食言的君子。）

8. 关系代词的省略：

限制性（即关系代词之前无逗号）定语从句中，若关系代词为及物动词的宾语，则该关系代词可省略。若关系代词为介词的宾语，介词移至定语从句的句尾时，该关系代词亦可省略。

例: This is the boy whom I saw yesterday.

o.　　vt.

= This is the boy I saw yesterday.

（这是我昨天看见的男孩。）

I enjoy reading the book which I bought yesterday.

o.　　vt.

= I enjoy reading the book I bought yesterday.

（我喜欢看我昨天买的书。）

序数词：the	first	第一
	second	第二
	⋮	⋮
	⋮	⋮
	last	最后

例: Gambling is the last thing which I would do. (×)

→ Gambling is the last thing that I would do. (✓)

（赌博是我最不愿做的一件事。）

He was the first man who came up with such an idea.（劣）

→ He was the first man that came up with such an idea.（佳）

（他是第一个想出这个点子的人。）

b. 最高级之后：

例: He is the best student whom I've ever taught. (×)

→ He is the best student that I've ever taught. (✓)

（他是我教过最好的学生。）

The most beautiful scene which I've ever seen is Guilin. (×)

→ The most beautiful scene that I've ever seen is Guilin. (✓)

（我所见过最漂亮的风景是桂林。）

c. "the very + 名词" 中的 very 为形容词，是一种强调用法，之前一定置定冠词 the。翻译时 very 一词不必译出。

例: He is the very man that I met yesterday.

= He is just the man that I met yesterday.

（他正是我昨天遇见的人。）

d. all 之后

例: All the students that are studying here are hardworking. (勿使用 who 取代 that)

（所有在此学习的学生都很用功。）

All that he said is true. (勿使用 which 取代 that)

= Everything that he said is true. (勿使用 which 取代 that)

（他所说的都是实话。）

注意
all 之后的关系代词 that 在所引导的定语从句中作宾语时，that 通常均予省略。

故: All (that) he said is true.
All (that) you have to do is (to) wait.
（你所要做的就是等待。）

e. "the only + 名词" 之后:

例: He is the only friend that I have.
（他是我唯一的朋友。）

f. 句中若有两个相同关系代词引导的定语从句出现时，为避免重复，第二个关系代词通常改用 that 取代。

例: He works hard, which is a fact which is known to us.（劣）
→ He works hard, which is a fact that is known to us.（佳）
（他很用功，这是我们皆知的事实。）

g. 关系代词若在 be 动词后作表语，表示某人的身份时，要使用 that，不可使用 who 或 which。

例: He is not the man who he once was. (×)
→ He is not the man that he once was. (✓)
（他已不是当年的他了。）

h. 两个名词性质不一，但却共用一个关系代词时，该关系代词要用 that 取代。

例: Look at the boy and the dog that are coming this way.
（注意看正朝这边走来的男孩和狗。）

i. 在下列句中，宜用 that 取代 who 或 which，以避免与疑问词重复:

例: Who who lies can win our trust? (劣)
疑问词 关系代词

上列问句中第一个 Who 是疑问词，作主语，第二个 who 则为关系代词，但两词外形重复，故应改为：

Who that lies can win our trust? (佳)
（说谎的人有谁会赢得我们的信任呢？）

如此，使 Who 形成问句中的主语，can win our trust 则为其谓语部分；而 that lies 则为定语从句，修饰 who。

例: What is it which you want? (劣)

上列句中 what 是疑问词，which 为关系代词，外形均有疑问词的样子，故 which 宜该用 that 取代，即：

What is it that you want? (佳)

（你要的是什么？）

如此，使 What is it（那是什么）作问句，而 that you want（你要的）则为定语从句，修饰 What。

11. 限制性定语从句可化简为分词短语：

限制性定语从句中，若关系代词为主语时，该定语从句可化简为分词短语。法则如下：

a. 删除该关系代词；

b. 之后的动词变成现在分词；

c. 若动词为 be 动词，变成现在分词 being 之后，可将 being 省略。

例: The girl who danced here yesterday is my sister.

限制性定语从句

→ The girl who danced here yesterday is my sister.

dancing (现在分词)

= The girl dancing here yesterday is my sister.

（昨天在此跳舞的女孩是我妹妹。）

Who is that boy that is standing over there?

限制性定语从句

→ Who is that boy that is standing over there?

(being)

= Who is that boy standing over there?

（站在那边的男孩是谁？）

I like the car which is parked in front of the post office.

限制性定语从句

→ I like the car which is parked in front of the post office.

(being)

= I like the car parked in front of the post office.

（我喜欢停在邮局前面的那辆车子。）

12. 非限制性定语从句不能化简为分词短语：

例: I met John, who said that he loved Mary very much. (√)

非限制性定语从句

（我遇见约翰，他说他很爱玛丽。）

→ I met John, ~~who~~ ~~said~~ that he loved Mary very much. (×)

saying

＊本例若化简成分词短语会造成误导，而成为修饰主语 I 的分词短语，译成："我一方面见到约翰，一方面又说他很爱玛丽。"句意与原句不合，故非限制性的定语从句不可化简为分词短语。

13. 非限制性定语从句可化简为先行词的同位语：

| who / which | + be + n.

此时就可化简为先行词的同位语，即：

a. 删除 who 或 which；

b. 之后的 be 动词变成现在分词 being；

c. 再将 being 省略，形成同位语。

例: I met John, who is a good friend of mine.

→ I met John, ~~who~~ ~~is~~ a good friend of mine.

(being)

= I met John, a good friend of mine.

同位语

（我遇到约翰，他是我的好朋友。）

He works hard, which is a fact that is known to all of us.

→ He works hard, ~~which~~ ~~is~~ a fact ~~that~~ ~~is~~ known to all of us.

(being) (being)

= He works hard, a fact known to all of us.

同位语

（他很用功，这是我们都知道的事实。）

> **注意**
>
> 主语同位语可置于主语前后位置。

例: John, a good friend of mine, came to see me yesterday.

主语　　主语同位语

= A good friend of mine, John came to see me yesterday.
主语同位语 主语
（我的好友约翰昨天来看我。）

14. 注意定语从句与插入语的关系：
定语从句中的关系代词不受插入语的影响。

a. 插入语的形成方式："主语 + 表认知的动词"，如：

I believe	（我相信）
I think	（我认为）
I feel	（我觉得）
I know	（我知道）
I consider	（我认为）
I find	（我发现）

b. 定语从句置入插入语的方法：

1) **先造一个含有限制性从句的定语从句。**

例：He is a man who never breaks his word.
限制性从句
（他是个从不食言的人。）

He is the man whom I met yesterday.
限制性从句
（他就是我昨天遇见的人。）

2) **再将插入语置于关系代词之后。**

例：He is a man who I think never breaks his word.
S 插入语
（我认为他是个从不食言的人。）

本例中，who 原本就作定语从句中的主语，并未因添加插入语 I think 而变成 whom。

例：He is the man whom I believe I met yesterday.
o. 插入语
（我相信他就是我昨天遇见的那个人。）

本例中，whom 原本就作定语从句中及物动词 met 的宾语。

例：He is a man whom I think never breaks his word. (×)

本例中，whom 之后有动词 breaks，且已有宾语 his word，故 whom 应改为主格 who，以作为定语从句中的主语。

c. 我们曾在第一章谈到 think、believe、feel、consider、find 等动词可作完全及物动词或不完全及物动词。赖老师再给同学们复习一下：

I	think find believe ⋮	that he is nice. 名词性从句

上列句中的 think、find、believe...为完全及物动词，分别译成"认为……"、"发现……"、"相信……"之后 that 引导的名词性从句作其宾语。

= I	think find believe ⋮	him 宾语	to be nice. 宾语补语

上列句中的 think、find、believe...为不完全及物动词，分别译成"认为……是……"、"发现……是……"、"相信……是……"，之后的 him 作其宾语，to be nice 则为宾语补语。

因此，此类动词在"who + be + 表语"的定语从句中亦有两种句型变化。

1) 作完全及物动词时：此类动词属于插入语。

例: He is a man who S	I think I find I believe	is nice. (✓)

（他是个我认为/发现/相信很善良的人。）

2) 作不完全及物动词时：此类动词不再是插入语。

例: He is a man	I think I find I believe	him to be nice. (×)

*He is a man 是句子，I think him to be nice 亦是句子，两句无连词连接，故属错误，应将 him 改为关系代词 whom，以引导定语从句。

→ He is a man	I think I find I believe	whom to be nice. (×)

*whom 虽已是关系代词，但应置于先行词 a man 之后。

→ He is a man whom 宾语	I think I find I believe	to be nice. (✓) 宾语补语

（我认为/发现/相信他是个很善良的人。）

换言之，以后见到这样的结构，表认知的动词之后有 is、are、was、 were 等 be 动词时，要用关系代词的主格 who；表认知的动词之后有 to be 时，则用关系代词的宾格 whom。

15. 定语从句可化简为不定式短语：

关系代词所引导的定语从句中，若该关系代词之前有介词时，可将该从句变换成不定式短语。

例：He has no house in which he can live.
prep.
= He has no house in which to live.
= He has no house to live in.
He has no house which to live in. (×)
（他没有房子住。）

Lend me your pen with which I can write my address.
= Lend me your pen with which to write my address.
= Lend me your pen to write my address with.
Lend me your pen which to write my address with. (×)
（把你的笔借我，我好写我的住址。）

I hate John, in whose words I have no trust. (可)
= I hate John, whose words I have no trust in. (佳)

3. 取代 whose 的结构：

稍早赖老师提到 whose 除可代替人以外，亦可代替物。只是代替物时，“whose + n.”亦可被“the + n. + of which”或“of which + the + n.”所取代。即：

whose + n.
= the + n. + of which
= of which + the + n.

例: I like to study in this school, whose faculty and facilities are top-notch.
= I like to study in this school, the faculty and facilities of which are top-notch.
= I like to study in this school, of which the faculty and facilities are top-notch.
（我喜欢在这所学校念书，它的师资及设备均是一流的。）

本例的 the faculty and facilities of which 部分，其中 which 原为 it，代替 this school，即：the faculty and facilities of it (= this school) are top-notch。但 it 应改为关系代词 which，以便形成定语从句，达到连接的目的。

例: This is a fancy car, whose color I like very much.
o. vt.
= This is a fancy car, the color of which I like very much.
= This is a fancy car, of which the color I like very much.
（这是一辆漂亮的车，我非常喜欢它的颜色。）

4. 限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句：

与关系代词一样，关系代词所有格之前若无逗号，即为限制性定语从句；若有逗号，即为非限制性定语从句。

例: This is Tom, whose father is an English teacher. ——非限制性定语从句
（这位是汤姆，他父亲是英语老师。）

I met a boy whose father is an English teacher. ——限制性定语从句
（我遇到一位父亲是英语老师的男孩。）

第三节 关系副词

1. 关系副词的种类：

关系副词一共有四种，均由"介词＋关系代词 which"变化而成：

where (= in which, on which, at which)
when (= in which, on which, at which)
why (= for which)
how (= in which)

例: This is the city where I met Mary.
（这就是我与玛丽相遇的城市。）
He came on Friday, when it was raining very hard.
（他星期五来这儿，那天雨下得很大。）
I don't know the reason why he cried.
（我不知道他哭的原因。）
That's how / the way he handled the thing.
（那就是他处理这件事情的方式。）

2. 关系副词的功能：

where 用以修饰表地方的名词；
when 用以修饰表时间的名词；
why 用以修饰 the reason；
但 how 和 the way 只能用其中之一。
为使同学们有清楚的概念，赖老师特别分项说明如下。

3. where 的用法：

where 引导的定语从句只用来修饰表地方的名词。我们在初中时已学到，表大地方（如城市、国家、区域）时，介词要用 in；表建筑物（如车站、商店、银行等）时，介词要用 at；表内部（在……之内）时，介词要用 in；表外在（在……上面）时，介词要用 on。因此，关系副词 where 可等于 in which、on which、at which。

例: This is the city in which I met Mary.
大地方
= This is the city where I met Mary.
I met him at the station, at which there were many passengers.
建筑物

= I met him at the station, where there were many passengers.
（我在车站遇见他，那里有许多旅客。）

I bought a cabinet in which I could store books.
在……之内

= I bought a cabinet where I could store books.
（我买了一个柜子，我可以把书放在里面。）

Do you see the desk on which there is a book?
在……上面

= Do you see the desk where there is a book?
（你看见那张上面有一本书的桌子了吗？）

4. when 的用法：

when 所引导的定语从句只用以修饰表时间的名词。我们已知，表日子时，介词要用 on（如 on Sunday，on Dec. 21）；表年、月或一段时间时，介词要用 in（如 in July、in 1981、in those days）；表几时几刻时，介词要用 at（如 at 8 o'clock）。

因此，关系副词 when 可等于 at which、on which、in which。

例: He came on Friday, on which it was raining hard.
日子

= He came on Friday, when it was raining hard.
（他星期五来这儿，那天雨下得很大。）

That's the year in which he graduated.
年

= That's the year when he graduated.
（就在那年他毕业了。）

The sun rose at 5:30, at which most people were still in their dreams.
时刻

= The sun rose at 5:30, when most people were still in their dreams.
（太阳五点半升起，那时许多人还在睡梦中。）

5. why 的用法：

why 只用以修饰 the reason（理由），系由 for which 变化而成。

例: I don't know the reason for which he cried.

= I don't know the reason why he cried.
（我不知道他为什么哭。）

That's the reason for which he committed suicide.
= That's the reason why he committed suicide.
（那就是他自杀的原因。）

6. how 的用法：

how 只用以修饰 the way，系由 in which 变化而成。

例: That's the way in which he handled the problem. (可)
= That's how he handled the problem. (佳)
= That's the way he handled the problem. (佳)
（那就是他处理这个问题的方法。）

*在前面第 2 要点曾提及，the way 与 how 不能并存，只能择其一。故下列说法是错误的：

That's the way how he handled the problem. (×)
I am sick of the way in which he looks at me. (可)
= I am sick of the way he looks at me. (佳)
（我讨厌他看我的样子。）

7. 关系副词使用要点：

a. 在限定修饰的定语从句中，除 where 以外，when 及 why 均可省略，而 how 则一定予以省略。

例: That's the place he was born. (×)
→ That's the place where he was born. (√)
（那就是他出生的地方。）

I shall never forget the day when he came.
= I shall never forget the day he came. (√)
（我永远也不会忘记他来的那天。）

That's the reason why he left. (√)
= That's the reason he left.
（那就是他离开的原因。）

I am sick of the way how he looks at me. (×)
→ I am sick of the way he looks at me. (√)

b. 不过 where、when、why、how 所修饰的名词若置于 be 动词之后作表语时，我们亦可省略该名词，而保留关系副词。

例: That is the place where he was born.
= That's where he was born.
（他就是在那儿出生的。）

That is the day when he'll come.

= That's when he'll come.

（那就是他要来的日子。）

That is the reason why he left.

= That's why he left.

（那就是他离开的原因。）

That is the way he did it.

= That's how he did it.

（那就是他处理的方式。）

c. where、when、why、how 亦可视为疑问代词，引导名词性从句，此时可作及物动词的宾语（见第一章）。

例: I know where he is.

vt.　名词性从句

（我知道他在哪里。）

I don't know when he'll come.

vt.　名词性从句

（我不知道他何时会来。）

I wonder why he left.

vt.　名词性从句

（我不知道他为何离去。）

I don't know how he'll do it.

vt.　名词性从句

（我不知道他将如何做此事。）

d. where 亦可作副词连词，等于 in the place where。

例: Put it where you found it.

= Put it in the place where you found it.

= in which

（把它放在你发现它的地方。）

Where there is smoke, there is fire.

= In the place where there is smoke, there is fire.

= in which

（有烟的地方就有火——无风不起浪。——谚语）

Where he lives, life is busy.
= In the place where he lives, life is busy.
= in which
（在他住的地方，生活很忙碌。）

e. the moment (when)... 一……就……
= the instant (when)...
= the minute (when)...
以上三个短语均视为副词连词，之后的 when 均予省略，等于 as soon as 的意思，引导状语从句，修饰主句。

例: As soon as / The moment / The instant / The minute he heard the sad news, he burst into tears.
（他一听到这悲伤的消息就哭起来了。）

其他类似的用法还有：

例: The time (when) he came, I was sleeping.
= When he came, I was sleeping.
（他来的时候，我正在睡觉。）

The day (when) he left，it was raining.
= When he left, it was raining.
（他离开的那一天，正下着雨。）

Every time (when) she cries, I lose my temper.
= Whenever she cries, I lose my temper.
（每次她哭，我就会发脾气。）

f. 偶尔在口语或文章中，我们会听到或见到有些人用 that 取代 when、why 当关系副词使用，只是这并非常态用法，仅列数例，供同学们参考。记住，严谨的写作不可用 that 当作关系副词使用。

例: I remember the day that he came.
= when
（我记得他来的那天。）

Probably that's the reason that he left.
= why
（那很有可能就是他离开的原因。）

第四节　关系指示代词

1. 关系指示代词由指示代词变化而成：

which 也可作关系指示代词。顾名思义，关系指示代词就是由指示代词变化过来的关系词，亦引导定语从句修饰前面的名词。

指示代词： that　（那个……）
　　　　　this　（这个……）
　　　　　those　（那些……）
　　　　　these　（这些……）

例: He speaks German, this language I don't understand. (×)

> **理由**
> 本句无连词。
> 可将 this 改为关系指示代词，以连接两句。
> → He speaks German, which language I don't understand. (√，罕)
> 定语从句

2. 关系指示代词的功能：

和关系代词一样，"关系指示代词 + n."可代表先行词或前面句中的部分概念，在所引导的定语从句中要作主语或宾语。

例: He is arrogant, this attitude I am sick of. (×)

→ He is arrogant, which attitude I am sick of. (√，罕)
（他很自大，那种态度我很讨厌。）

His car is blue, that color I like very much. (×)

→ His car is blue, which color I like very much. (√，罕)
（他的车是蓝色的，那种颜色我很喜欢。）

He stayed there for a week, during this time he did nothing. (×)

→ He stayed there for a week, during which time he did nothing. (√，罕)
（他在那里待了一个星期，在这段时间里他什么都没做。）

第五节　复合关系代词

1. 复合关系代词的种类：

代替人：

whoever　　（凡……的人）
= anybody who

whomever　　（凡……的人）
= anybody whom

代替人或物：

whichever　　（三者以上）
= any one | which / who |　（同一类的任何一个……）

whichever　　（二者）
= either | which / who |　（同一类的任何一个……）

代替物：

what = the thing(s) which　　（所……的东西）
whatever = anything which　　（……的任何东西）

由上得知，复合关系代词系由两个词类复合而成：一方面含有先行词（如 anybody、the thing、anything），一方面又含有关系代词（如 who、whom、which）。

2. whoever 的用法：

同学们在使用 whoever 作复合关系代词时，一定要注意下列步骤：

a. 先视 whoever 为两个词，即：anybody who。

b. anybody 是代词，可在主句中当作主语或宾语；who 为关系代词，引导定语从句，并在该从句中作主语。

1) 我们可先用 anybody 作主语造一个句子：

例: <u>Anybody</u> should be punished.
　　主语
（任何人都应受处罚。）

再造一个以 who 为主语的定语从句：

例: who makes such a mistake

然后将 who makes such a mistake 置于 anybody 之后，即成：

Anybody who makes such a mistake should be punished.
主语　　　　定语从句　　　　及物动词的被动语态
= Whoever makes such a mistake should be punished.
（凡犯此错的人都应受罚。）

2) 我们再用 anybody 作宾语造一个主句：
例: I hate anybody.
宾语
（我讨厌任何人。）

再造一个以 who 为主语的定语从句：
例: who tells lies

然后将 who tells lies 置于 anybody 之后，即成：
I hate anybody who tells lies.
宾语　　定语从句
= I hate whoever tells lies.
（我讨厌任何说谎的人。）
千万不可写成：
I hate whomever tells lies. (×)

理由
whomever 等于 anybody whom，而 whom 只能作宾语，不可能作主语，故 whom 之后不可能有动词 tells。

3. whomever 的用法：
我们已知 whomever 等于 anybody whom。因 whom 在定语从句中只能作宾语，而且此处的 anybody，也只能在主句中作宾语，因此 whomever 绝不可作主语。造句的方法如下：

a. 先造一个以 anybody 作宾语的主句：
例: Give it to anybody.
介词　宾语
（把它给任何人。）

b. 再造一个以 whom 为宾语的定语从句：
例: whom you like

c. 然后将 whom you like 置于 anybody 之后，即成：

Give it to anybody whom you like.

定语从句

= Give it to whomever you like.

（把它给任何你喜欢的人。）

4. whichever 的用法：

whichever 是指同一类的任何东西，如三本以上的书其中任何一本，或两本书的任何一本。其造句的方法则与 whoever 及 whomever 完全一样，故赖老师不再详述，只提供下例供同学们参考。

例：There are many books here. You may take | any book which / any one which | you like.

同类东西

= There are many books here. You may take whichever you like.

（这里有许多书，你可以拿任何一本你所喜欢的。）

5. what 的用法：

what 是最常见的复合关系代词，也是最容易使用的一种。

a. 首先我们要了解，what 作复合关系代词时，可视为 the thing / things which，通常译成"所……的东西"。

例：What he said is true.

（他所说的话是真的。）

I am interested in what he is doing.

（我对他目前所做的事很有兴趣。）

b. 以 what 造句时，要注意下列原则：

1) 前面不可有先行词（名词）；
2) 将 what 视为 the thing / things which；
3) which 在所引导的定语从句中可作主语、宾语或在 be 动词后作表语。

例：What bothers me is that I have no time.

= The thing which bothers me is that I have no time.

主语　　定语从句

（让我困扰的是我没有时间。）

本例中 what 之前无名词。what 变成 the thing which 之后，which 在所引导的定语从句中作主语，故结构正确。

2) 由于 how 为副词，可修饰形容词或副词，故预先造一个含有形容词或副词的句子，以便稍后由 how 修饰：

例：He is nice.
adj.
He works hard.
adv.

3) 再将上例置于 no matter how 之后，即成：

No matter how he is nice...
adv. adj.
No matter how he works hard...
adv. adv.

4) 最后将句中的形容词或副词移位在 how 之后，形成状语从句，再接主句，即完成整个句子。

例：No matter how nice he is, I don't like him.
adv. adj.
= However nice he is, I don't like him.
（不论他有多好，我都不喜欢他。）
No matter how hard he works, I don't respect him.
adv. adv.
= However hard he works, I don't respect him.
（不论他工作有多努力，我都不会尊敬他。）

注意
however 或 no matter how 亦可修饰动词，此时 however 或 no matter how 之后直接接主语即可。

10. whether 的用法：

表“不论是否”时，只需 whether 即可，不可使用 no matter whether。whether 本身就可作副词连词，引导状语从句，以逗号与主句相隔。

例：No matter whether he is rich... (×)
→ Whether he is rich (or not), Jane will marry him. (✓)
（不论他是否富有，简都将嫁给他。）

别忘了，whether 亦可用以引导名词性从句（参阅第一章）。

比较下列之不同：

a. 引导状语从句

例: Whether he is rich (or not) , it doesn't matter. (有逗号相隔)

状语从句 主句

(他是否富有，那都没关系。)

b. 引导名词性从句

例: Whether he is rich (or not) doesn't matter.（无逗号相隔）

名词性从句作主语 动词

= It doesn't matter whether he is rich (or not).

(他是否富有都没关系。)

11. however 的特殊句型:

however 作副词连词所引导的状语从句中，主语之后若含有“be 动词 + 形容词”时，同学们要特别注意下列结构变化:

例: However poor he is, he doesn't want anyone to help him.

adj.

= However poor he may be, he doesn't want...

= Be he ever so poor, he doesn't want... (罕)

(不论多穷，他都不会要求别人的帮助。)

第六节　准关系代词

1. 准关系代词的种类：

准关系代词只有三个：than、as、but。

例: I have more money than you (do).
（我比你有钱。）

He has as much money as I (do).
（他的钱和我的一样多。）

There is nothing but he knows.
（没有他不知道的事情。）

同学们在看到上列三个例子之后，一定感到一头雾水，不知赖老师在说什么。别急，且听赖老师慢慢道来。

2. 准关系代词形成的条件：

than、as、but 作准关系代词时，前面必须有个先行词（名词）。在上例中，我们见到 than 之前有名词 money，as 之前亦有名词 money，而 but 之前则有代词 nothing。这就告诉我们一个重要的概念：than、 as、but 之前若有名词，就可形成准关系代词。

3. than 作准关系代词的用法：

than 之前若有名词时，than 就等于：“ than + the + 前面的名词 + 关系代词（who、whom、which）”。换言之，我们可将 than 视为关系代词，在所引导的从句中要作主语、宾语或 be 动词后的表语。

a. 主语：

例: I have more money than is needed.
　　　　　　　　　n.　准关代
（我现有的钱比所需的要多。）

＊此处 than 等于 than the money which，which 作主语，之后有动词 is needed。

More guests than were invited came.
　　　n.　准关代　　　　动词
（来的客人比受邀请的多。）

＊此处 than 等于 than the guests who，who 作主语，之后有动词 were invited。整句中 More guests 是主语，came 是其动词，中间的 than were invited 可视作定语从句，修饰 More guests。

There are more books than are needed.
　　　　　　　复数名词　复数动词
（这里的书超过需求量。）

*此处 than 等于 than the books which，which 作主语，之后有动词 are needed。

明白了这个道理之后，我们以后千万不要再造这样的句子：

I have more money than it is needed. (×)

本例中多了主语 it，使得 than 无法再作主语，故应将 it 删除，此句方正确。

b. 宾语：

than 作宾语的用法，是我们常见的一种句型。只是我们已习以为常，而未注意 than 是个准关系代词。

例: I have more money than he needs.

n.　准关代　vt.

（我现有的钱比他所需要的多。）

*本句中的 than 即等于 than the money which，which 作 needs 的宾语。

I have more books than you have. (劣)

n.　准关代　vt.

（我的书比你的多。）

*本句中的 than 即等于 than the books which，which 作 have 的宾语。但 than you have 中的 have 与前面的 I have 中的 have 动词相同，故为避免重复，第二个 have 就改成 do，并可省略，而成：

I have more books than you do. (佳)

或将 do 省略，改写如下：

I have more books than you.

c. be 动词后的表语：

例: He is a better student than you are.

n.　准关代　be 动词

（他是个好学生，比你还好。）

*than 即等于 than the student that，that 实际是 be 动词 are 后之表语。此处的 that 原应为 who，但关系代词作 be 动词之后的表语时，均用 that 取代。

且上句中的 are 与句首主语 He 之后的 is 同属 be 动词，亦可省略，故上句亦可改写成：

He is a better student than you.

4. as 作准关系代词的用法：

如同 than 一样，as 之前若有名词时，as 就等于“as + the + 前面的名词 + 关系代词（who、whom、which）”。换言之，我们可将 as 视为关系代词，在所引导的从句中要作主语、宾语或 be 动词后的表语。只是 as 若作准关系代词时，只用于下列短语中：

such + n. + as...　　（像……那样的……）
the same + n. + as...　　（和……相同的……）
as + adj. + n. + as...　　（和……一样的……）

a. such + n. + as...

1) 主语:

例: I don't like such a man as tells lies.

n.　准关代

（我不喜欢那种会说谎的人。）

* 本句中的 as 即等于 as the man who，关系代词 who 在其后的定语从句中作主语，之后有动词 tells lies。

2) 宾语:

例: I respect such an honest man as you described.

n. 准关代　　vt.

（我尊敬像你描述的这样诚实的人。）

* 此处的 as 即等于 as the man whom，关系代词 whom 作及物动词 described 之宾语。

3) be 动词后的表语（通常省略 be 动词）:

例: In our company there is not such a man as David (is).

n.　准关代

（我们公司里没有像大卫这样的人。）

* 本句中 as 即等于 as the man that，that 作 be 动词 (is) 后之表语。

Such a lazy student as John (is) will get nowhere.

n.　准关代

（像约翰这么懒的学生不会有什么成就的。）

* 本句中 as 即等于 as the student that，that 作 be 动词 (is) 后之表语。

b. the same + n. + as...

1) 主语:

例: I have the same book as is laid on the desk.

n.　准关代

（我有一本书，和放在桌上那本一样。）

* 此处 as 即等于 as the book which，关系代词 which 作主语。

I have been thinking of buying a car.
　　现在完成进行时　　动名词
= I have been considering buying a car.
　　现在完成进行时　　动名词
（我一直在考虑买辆车子。）

故凡表“想要”时，均使用表“意愿”的动词，以名词不定式作其宾语。上列译句，应为：

例：I | want / desire / intend / expect | to buy a car. (✓)

另外，anticipate 及 expect 均表“期望”，只是 anticipate 之后接动名词作宾语，而 expect 之后则接名词不定式作宾语。

例：I anticipate seeing you agin.
= I expect to see you again.
（我期盼能再次与你见面。）

4) 名词不定式不可直接作不完全及物动词的宾语，一定要以形式宾语 it 代替，加了宾语补语之后，再接名词不定式。句型如下：

S + | find（发现） / think（认为） / believe（相信） / consider（认为） / deem（认为） / feel（觉得） / make（使） | + it + 名词/形容词（作补语）+ 名词不定式

it：形式宾语；名词不定式：真正宾语

例：I find to climb mountains interesting. (×)

理由

名词不定式不得直接作不完全及物动词的宾语，一定要用形式宾语 it 代替。

改正：I find it interesting to climb mountains. (✓)

（我发现爬山很有趣。）

例: He came to see me.

vi.

（他来看我。）

He has agreed to do it.

vi.

（他已同意做那件事。）

He sang a song to please her.

vt.

（他唱首歌以取悦她。）

He tends to lie.

vi.

（他爱说谎。）

You'll soon get to know him.

vi.

（你很快就会了解他。）

b. 修饰形容词：

副词不定式修饰形容词，一定置于该形容词之后。

例: He is able to handle the problem.

adj.

（他能处理这问题。）

He is apt to lie.

adj.

= He tends to lie.

（他爱说谎。）

This book is good to read.

adj.

（这本书很好，值得一读。）

c. 修饰副词：

副词不定式修饰副词时，一定置于该副词之后。

例: He is old enough to go swimming alone.

adv. ← to go swimming alone

（他长大了，足以单独去游泳了。）

He is too old to swim.

adv. ← to swim

（他老得不能游泳了。）

注意:

使用副词不定式时，应注意下列事项:

a. 副词不定式修饰动词时，多半表示目的，此时该副词不定式亦同时修饰含该动词的整个句子。

例: He sang a song to please her.

vt. ← to please her

→ He sang a song to please her.

整个句子 ← to please her

He came to see me.

vi. ← to see me

→ He came to see me.

整个句子 ← to see me

He rushed all the way here to catch the train.

vi. ← to catch the train

→ He rushed all the way here to catch the train.

整个句子 ← to catch the train

（他一路赶来以便赶上火车。）

* 上列句中，all the way（一路），以及 here 均为副词，亦修饰 rushed。

注意:

1) 表“目的”的副词不定式，通常置于动词之后，但亦可移位至主语之前，以逗号相隔。

= I hope to do it. (✓)
完全 vt.　宾语
（我希望做此事。）

然而，wish 及 hope 亦可作不及物动词，之后接介词 for，再接名词。

例: All we can do now is wish for / hope for a miracle.
（我们现在能做的也只有期待奇迹了。）

b. lead 加了宾语之后，可接 to 引导的不定式短语，但此 to 亦可视为介词，接名词或动名词为其宾语。

例: His speech led me to understand the importance of learning English.
（to understand：不定式 (to + V)）
= His speech led me to the understanding that it is important to learn English.
（to：介词；understanding：动名词）
（他的演讲引导我了解学英语是重要的。）

c. allow、permit 可作完全及物动词，直接用动名词作宾语。

例: They don't allow / permit smoking in the room.
（smoking：动名词）
（他们不允许在房间里吸烟。）

d. allow 及 permit 亦可作不完全及物动词，接了宾语之后，再接不定式短语作宾语补语，句型如下：
allow / permit sb to V　允许某人从事……

例: They don't allow / permit anyone to smoke in the room.
（anyone：宾语；to smoke：宾语补语）
（他们不允许任何人在房间里吸烟。）

12. 意愿动词与虚拟语气的关系：
表意愿的动词 expect、intend、want、hope 如用一般过去时，再接“to have + 过去分词”时，则等于“would have + 过去分词”，形成表与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。即：

would have + 过去分词　本来想……
= expected to / wanted to / intended to / hoped to have + 过去分词

例: I would have done it, but I was busy.

= I | expected to / intended to | have done it, but I was busy.

（我本打算要做这件事，但当时我很忙。）

不过，我们亦可将这些表意愿的动词改为过去完成时，之后接 “to + 原形动词”，亦形成表与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。即：

would have + 过去分词

= | expected to / intended to / ⋮ | have + 过去分词

= | had expected / had intended / ⋮ | to + 原形动词

例: I would have done it, but I was busy.

= I expected to have done it, but I was busy.

= I had expected to do it, but I was busy.

13. was / were to have + 过去分词

= should have + 过去分词

本应该……（但却未……）

本结构亦可表与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。

例: I was to have done it, but I didn't have time then.

= I should have done it, but I didn't have time then.

（我本应该把它做完了，但我没时间。）

They were to have started out early, but it was raining heavily.

= They should have started out early, but it was raining heavily.

（他们本应提早出发，但当时正在下大雨。）

14. 不定式作主语之结构变化：

不定式短语作主语时，若短语中最后一个词为宾语，该宾语可移置句首作主语，其余部分则移至句尾。

例: To please my father is hard. (可)

（短语中有宾语 my father）

= My father is hard to please. (佳)

（我老爸很难取悦。）

但并非所有的分词均可当形容词用。有些分词无法译成“……的”。

killed 不能译成“感到杀的”
killing 不能译成“令人杀的”
written 不能译成“感到写的”
writing 不能译成“令人写的”

此类分词，只能置于 be 动词之后（不可置于系动词如 become、remain、appear、feel、seem 等之后），不视为形容词，而视为动词的进行时或被动语态。

例: He was killed.
vt. 的一般过去时被动语态
（他被杀了。）

He was killing the termites.
vt. 的过去进行时
（他正在杀白蚁。）

He was writing a letter.
vt. 的过去进行时
（他正在写一封信。）

The letter was being written.
vt. 的过去进行时被动语态
（这封信还正在写。）

He was leaving.
vi. 的过去进行时
（他正要离去。）

He became killed. (×)
He appeared writing a letter. (×)

b. 及物动词之后的宾语补语：

例: I found him killed.
vt. 宾语 宾语补语
（我发现他被杀了。）

I want it done right away.
vt. 宾语 宾语补语
（我要这件事立即完成。）

They found him tired.
vt. 宾语 宾语补语
（他们发现他累了。）

4. 分词可作副词用：

少数的现在分词有副词 very 的意味，可修饰其后的形容词。

例：It's freezing / biting (adv.) cold (adj.) today.

（今天天气非常冷/冰冻般的冷/如皮肤被咬般的冷。）

The tea is boiling (adv.) hot (adj.).

（茶非常热/滚烫般的热。）

He was hopping (adv.) mad (adj.) on hearing his dismissal.

（当听到自己被解雇时，他简直气疯了/气得要跳脚。）

We're having a ripping (adv. = very) good (adj.) time.

（我们此刻玩得愉快极了。）

但也有过去分词作副词用的例子。

例：An estimated (adv.) 54 (adj.) people were killed in the air crash.

= It is estimated that 54 people were killed in the air crash.

（据估计有 54 个人在空难中丧生。）

A great (adv.) many (adj.) students are more and more interested in learning English.

（许多学生对学英语愈来愈感兴趣。）

注意

少数形容词亦有副词的功能，修饰之后的形容词。

例：He is dead (adv.) wrong (adj.). (dead 为副词，等于 completely，表“完全地”)

（他大错特错。）

It's awful (adv.) hot (adj.) today. (awful 为副词，等于 very，表“非常地”)

（今天热得要命。）

*awful 亦作形容词，表“差劲的”，等于 terrible。

c. 他光着脚（barefooted）走进屋子里。

译：________________________

d. 他挥手向她道别。

译：________________________

示范译句：

a. Not knowing how to deal with the problem, I consulted him.
b. As I entered the room, I found books scattered around.
c. He came into the room (being) barefooted.
d. He said goodbye to her, waving his hand.

9. 分词结构——状语从句化简法：

once、when、while、if、unless、though 等连词所引导的状语从句中，若主语与主句中的主语相同时，亦可化简为分词结构，法则与单句化简法完全相同。

例：If ~~I am~~ free, I'll go with you.
(being)

= If free, I'll go with you.
（如果有空，我将和你一起去。）

In those days, when ~~he didn't know~~ how to proceed in an emergency, he
not knowing
would consult his father.

= In those days, when not knowing how to proceed in an emergency, he would consult his father.
（在那段日子里，当他不知道如何处理紧急状况时，都会请教他父亲。）

He will do it if ~~he is~~ properly encouraged.
(being)

= He will do it if properly encouraged.
（如果适当地鼓励他，他会去做。）

Unless ~~you are~~ otherwise instructed, you should do as I said.
(being)

= Unless otherwise instructed, you should do as I said.
（除非另有指示，你应照我的话去做。）

While ~~I was~~ here, I had a good time.
(being)

= While here, I had a good time.
（在这里时，我很愉快。）

c. regarding / concerning

例: He wrote an article | regarding / concerning / about / on (介词) | environmental pollution.

例: He wrote an article	regarding concerning about on 介词	environmental pollution.

（他写了篇有关环境污染的文章。）

12. 独立分词短语：

某些独立分词短语有副词的功能，通常置于句首，修饰整个句子。

例: Generally speaking, men are physically stronger than women.
（一般而言，男人比女人强壮。）

Strictly speaking, he is not good enough.
（严格说来，他不够好。）

Frankly speaking, he is not the man I want.
（老实说，他不是我所要的人。）

Judging from his appearance, he seems to be rich.
（从他的外表看来，他似乎很有钱。）

Talking of novels, have you read his works?
（谈到小说，你是否读过他的作品？）

According to John, the fire broke out at ten in the morning.
（根据约翰的说法，火灾是在早上 10 点发生的。）

Seeing that you have no time, I'll have Peter replace you.
（既然你没时间，我会叫彼得代替你。）

13. 与使役动词有关的重要分词短语：

下列为与使役动词有关的分词短语，由于经常出现，故同学们应熟记。

例: I started the ball rolling.
（我给那件事开了个头。）

The news set my heart throbbing.
（这个消息使我心悸不已。）

I am sorry to have kept you waiting.
（我很抱歉让你等候。）

I couldn't make myself understood.
（我无法让别人听懂我的话。）

I had my shoes repaired.
（我把我的鞋拿去修好了。）

He got a new suit made.
（他订做了一套新西装。）

You should leave it unsaid.
（你应该别提这事。）

I like my eggs half boiled.
（我喜欢煮得半熟的蛋。）

I had my watch stolen.
（我的表被偷了。）

第三节　动名词

概说

动名词的形态与现在分词完全一样。

例: He is dancing.
现在分词
（他正在跳舞。）

His hobby is dancing.
动名词
（他的爱好是跳舞。）

Not knowing what to do, he felt embarrassed.
现在分词
（不知道该做什么，他觉得很尴尬。）

Not knowing what to do was an embarrassment for him.
动名词
（不知道该做什么，对他来说是件尴尬之事。）

由于动名词与现在分词的形态完全相同，因此同学们往往将之混为一谈，以致在从事英语翻译时，造成意思的偏差，同学们不可不慎。破解此一难题的秘诀，就是要牢记一个观念：动名词具有名词的性质，名词在句中可作主语、宾语及表语；同样地，动名词在句中亦可作主语、宾语及表语。我们分项叙述如下：

1. 动名词的第一功能——主语：

例: Working with him is fun.
主语　动词
（和他一起工作很有趣。）

Seeing is believing.
主语　动词
（眼见为实。）

Losing his fortune drove him mad.
主语　动词
（失去财富使他发疯了。）

Not knowing what to do was an embarrassment for him.

主语　　　　　动词

（不知道该做什么，对他是件尴尬之事。）

注意:

a. 上述各例中，Working、Seeing、Losing 以及 Not knowing 均作主语，故为动名词。

b. 动名词作主语时，仍有动词的意味，若该动名词原为及物动词，之后仍须加宾语。宾语即使为复数，所形成的动名词短语仍视为单数，之后接单数动词。

例: Helping others give me great pleasure. (×)

动名词短语　复数动词

→ Helping others gives me great pleasure. (√)

单数动词

（帮助别人使我很愉快。）

理由:

本句并非 others 作主语，而是整个帮助别人的动作作主语，故之后动词用单数。

c. 动名词短语作主语时，亦可被形式主语 it 代替，而将该动名词短语移至句尾，改变成不定式短语。

故上列例句可改写为：

It gives me great pleasure to help others.

注意:

只有在 It is no use 的结构中，真正主语仍应为动名词。

例: It is no use crying over spilt milk. (√)

形式主语　　　　真正主语

（覆水难收。）

It is no use to cry over spilt milk. (×)

这是习惯用法，同学们宜牢记。

例: It is no use reasoning with such a stubborn man.

= It is of no use / useless to reason with such a stubborn man.

= There is no use / no sense / no point in reasoning with such a stubborn man.

（和这样固执的人讲理是没有用的。）

2. 动名词的第二功能—— be 动词后的表语：

例: Seeing is believing.
表语
（眼见为实。）

His hobby is collecting stamps.
表语
（他的爱好是集邮。）

注意:

a. be 动词之后可用不定式或动名词作表语。但赖老师稍早提过，用不定式作表语时，通常表示一种意愿、目的、计划或未完成的事；用动名词作表语时，则表示一种经历或已知的事。

例: His ambition is winning the championship. (劣)

→ His ambition is to win the championship. (佳)

（他的野心是要赢得冠军。）

理由:

ambition 表“野心、企图”，为尚未完成的事，故用不定式短语作表语为佳。

同理:

My	hope	（希望）	is to fulfill the mission.
	goal	（目标）	（完成任务）
	desire	（欲望）	
	wish	（愿望）	
	intention	（意图）	
	plan	（计划）	
	purpose	（目的）	

例: My favorite sport is skating.

（我最喜爱的运动是滑冰。）

注意:

我最喜爱的运动是已知的事，故使用动名词 skating 作表语。

例: Seeing is believing.

（眼见为实。）

理由:

眼见为实，表示一种经历，故用动名词 believing 作表语。但若主语改用不定式 To see，则为求对称的美观，表语亦改用 to believe，即：

To see is to believe.

（眼见为实。）

d. remember、forget、regret 的用法：

1) 表追述过去已发生的事物时：

remember（记得曾） forget（忘记曾） regret（后悔曾）	+ 动名词

例：I remember | seeing her before. / having seen her before. |

（我记得曾见过她。）

I forgot | mailing that letter. / having mailed that letter. |

（我忘记我已寄了那封信。）

I regret | doing it. / having done it. |

（我后悔做了此事。）

2) 表以后要做或未完成的事物时：

remember（记得要） forget（忘记要） regret（遗憾要）	+ to V

例：I'll remember to see him tomorrow.

（我会记得明天去看他。）

I forgot to mail this letter.

（我忘了寄这封信。）

I regret to tell you the bad news.

= I'm sorry to tell you the bad news.

（我很遗憾要告诉你这个坏消息。）

e. 下列动词可用不定式或动名词作宾语，意思不变。

I	like（喜欢） dislike（不喜欢） love（爱） hate（恨）	to do it. doing it.
I	continued（继续） began（开始） started（开始）	to do it. doing it.

I hope that he may join us.

vt. o.

（我希望他能加入我们。）

但并非所有的及物动词均可用 that 从句作宾语。表示喜欢、厌恶、在乎之意的及物动词，如 like、dislike（不喜欢）、enjoy、mind 等就不可接 that 从句作宾语。

例: I don't like that he smokes here. (×)

vt. o.

I don't enjoy that John joins us. (×)

vt. o.

补救的方法就是将 that 从句改为"所有格 + 动名词"的短语。

例: I don't like ~~that he smokes~~ here. (×)

(his smoking)

→ I don't like his smoking here. (√)

（我不喜欢他在此抽烟。）

I don't enjoy ~~that John joins~~ us. (×)

(John's joining)

→ I don't enjoy John's joining us. (√)

（我不喜欢约翰加入我们。）

Would you mind ~~that I open~~ the window? (×)

my opening

→ Would you mind my opening the window? (√)

= Would you mind if I opened the window? (√)

（如果我开窗你介意吗？）

比较:

Would you mind opening the window?

（请你开窗子，你介意吗？）

注意

that 从句亦不可直接作介词的宾语。

例: I am curious about that he stays up late every night. (×)

prep. o.

此时，亦须将 that 从句变成"所有格 + 动名词"的短语。

a writing pad	便条纸
a starting point	起点
a sewing machine	缝纫机
a visiting card	名片
drinking water	饮用水

注意:

动名词与作形容词用的现在分词均可置于名词前。分辨的方法如下：

a. 若为“动名词 + 名词”，则后者有前者的功能，即动名词有“用来……”之意。

例: a walking stick
动名词
（手杖——用来走路的棍子）

a sleeping car
动名词
（卧铺车厢——用来睡觉的车厢）

a dining room
动名词
（饭厅——用来吃饭的房间）

b. 若为“现在分词 + 名词”，则后者有前者的性质，即现在分词有“正在……”或“会……”之意。

例: a walking dictionary
现在分词
（活字典或识字很多的人——会走路的字典/非用来走路的字典。）

a sleeping baby
现在分词
（睡觉中的婴儿——正在睡觉的婴儿/非用来睡觉的婴儿。）

a barking dog
现在分词
（正在叫的狗/非用来叫的狗。）

7. “动名词 + 宾语”作主语的变化：

例: Writing letters is a trying job for me. (佳)
= The writing of letters is a trying job for me. (可)
（对我而言，写信是件苦差事。）

Shooting birds is forbidden here. (佳)
= The shooting of birds is forbidden here. (可)
（在此射鸟是被禁止的/此处禁止射鸟。）

8. 有些动名词亦可作可数的普通名词用：

例: As an old saying goes, "Honesty is the best policy."
（俗语有云："诚实为上策。"）

A knocking at the door was heard.
（敲门声被听见。）

He has a good understanding of the problem.
（他对此问题很了解。）

Don't forget to take your belongings (恒用复数) with you.
（别忘了带你的东西。）

9. 常用的动名词惯用语：

a. There is no V-ing　　不可能……
= It is impossible to V

例: There is no reasoning with such a stubborn man.
= It is impossible to reason with such a stubborn man.
（和这么固执的人理论是不可能的。）

b. It is no use V-ing　　……是无用的
= It is of no use to V

例: It is no use trying to escape.
= It is of no use to try to escape.
（想逃走是没有用的。）

c. cannot	help resist refrain from stop	+ V-ing	忍不住……

= cannot but V
= cannot help but V

例: He couldn't help crying when he saw her.
= He couldn't but cry when he saw her.
（当他看见她时，忍不住就哭了。）

d. on V-ing　　一……就……

例:

	On Upon	hearing it, he cried.
=	As soon as Once The moment The instant	he heard it, he cried.

=	He had	no sooner heard it than hardly heard it when scarcely heard it when	he cried.

=	No sooner had he heard it than Hardly had he heard it when Scarcely had he heard it when	he cried.

（一听到那件事他就哭了。）

EXERCISE

I. 请选出一个正确的非谓语动词：

1. They don't allow people _____ here.
   (A) smoke (B) to smoke (C) smoking (D) to smoking
2. _____ on the sofa, my father was reading the newspaper.
   (A) Sat (B) Seat (C) To sit (D) Sitting
3. Peter is, _____, a walking dictionary.
   (A) so to tell (B) to say so (C) so to speak (D) so to talk
4. I won't consider _____ my job at this time.
   (A) quit (B) to quit (C) quitting (D) to quitting
5. You'd better have that bad tooth _____ out.
   (A) pull (B) to pull (C) to be pulled (D) pulled
6. It is necessary _____ that work today.
   (A) to him to do (B) of him to do (C) for him to do (D) of him doing
7. It is very kind _____ so.
   (A) for you to do (B) of you to do
   (C) to you to do (D) for you doing
8. Strictly _____, your writing is poor.
   (A) speak (B) to speak (C) speaking (D) spoken
9. _____ with his sister's grades, his grades are not so good.
   (A) Compare (B) Compared
   (C) Comparing (D) By comparing
10. I meant _____ you, but I forgot.
    (A) to say (B) saying (C) to tell (D) telling
11. Your idea, although quite good, needs _____ out.
    (A) try (B) to try (C) trying (D) being tried

12. The boy stood _____ at the sight of blood.

(A) horrified (B) horrible (C) to horrify (D) horrifying

13. Does anyone _____ Mark live here?

(A) call (B) called (C) to call (D) calling

14. She knelt down before him, with tears _____ down her face.

(A) streaming (B) to streaming (C) stream (D) streamed

15. Do you understand the language _____ on that island?

(A) to speak (B) speaking (C) is spoken (D) spoken

II. 请选出一个正确的答案：

16. John was never heard _____ the Taiwan dialect.

(A) to speak (B) speak

(C) to have been spoken (D) spoke

17. You were opposed to _____ to go with us to the library, weren't you?

(A) our inviting her (B) us invite her

(C) that we invite her (D) we inviting her

18. Walking along the river, _____.

(A) I met several groups of hikers

(B) the river met several groups of hikers

(C) it was several groups of hikers

(D) we met by several groups of hikers

19. He asked me if John had the ability _____.

(A) to do that (B) to doing (C) of doing that (D) do that

20. Asked if he could come to the party that night, _____.

(A) nothing was said from anyone

(B) they did not get an answer from him

(C) nothing was said by him

(D) John nodded his head and left the room

21. It is sometimes difficult _____ you have just met.
    (A) to make pleasant conversation at people
    (B) making pleasant conversation on people
    (C) making pleasant conversation for people
    (D) to make pleasant conversation with people

22. The same thing, _____, would have been disastrous.
    (A) had it happened in crowded places
    (B) if happened in crowded places
    (C) if had happened in crowded places
    (D) if has happened in crowded places

23. Because of greatly reduced air pollution, this city is still _____.
    (A) a good place where to live　　(B) lived as a good place
    (C) a good place to live in　　(D) living in as a good place

24. The meeting is to be adjourned, everything _____ undecided.
    (A) left　(B) to leave　(C) leaving　(D) leaves

25. I never know _____ when I go on a trip.
    (A) what clothes should take　　(B) what clothes to take
    (C) what clothes will I take　　(D) I take what clothes

III. 请选出错误的画线部分：

26. Medical researchers have not yet (A) been able to have developed (B) an effective (C) vaccine against (D) influenza.

27. Last week I boarded (A) the ordinary train, which, as I expected, (B) was crowded (C) and there was no seat left, so I had to keep stood for (D) more than two hours.

28. I didn't know how (A) to get (B) to your house, so (C) I stopped asking (D) the way.

11. need V-ing　　需要被……
= need to be p.p.
That car needs repairing.
= That car needs to be repaired.
（那辆车需要修理了。）
12. stand、lie、sit 等动词之后可接分词作补语，此处的 horrified 表“感到恐惧的”，为过去分词作形容词。
13. Does any one called Mark live here?
= Does any one who is called Mark live here?
14. “with + 宾语 + 分词”结构，此处因表主动语态，故用现在分词 streaming 作宾语补语。
15. 本题的 spoken 为过去分词，由 which is spoken 化简而来。
16. 在被动语态中，知觉动词（hear、see、feel...）之后的不定式短语不可将 to 省略。
17. a. be opposed to V-ing　　反对……
b. our inviting her 系从 we invite her 变化而成。
18. 空格前有分词短语“Walking along the river”（沿着河走），故主语必须是人，人才有走路的能力，(A) 应为正选；(D) 应删除 by。
19. ability 之后必须用 to V 来修饰，不可用 of V-ing。
20. (Being) asked if...
= When John was asked if...
21. a. 以 it 作形式主语时，真正主语必须为不定式短语，不可用动名词。
b. make conversation with　　和……谈话
22. had it happened in crowded places
= if it had happened in crowded places
23. to live in 为不定式作形容词用，修饰 place。
24. ...everything left undecided.
= ...and everything is left undecided.
25. “what + 名词 + to V”形成名词短语。
what clothes to take
= what clothes I will take
26. be able to 之后不可用不定式的完成时，故 to have developed 应改为 to develop。

> **注意**
> 在本结构中的 should 通常予以省略，而保留其后的原形动词。

例: It is important that he finish the job before leaving.
（重要的是，他必须在走之前完成工作。）

It is imperative that he do the work now.
（他现在应该赶紧做这事。）

c. It is | surprising / amazing | that...should (居然)...　令人惊异的是……居然……

例: It is surprising that he should be so kind.
（令人惊讶的是，他竟然这么仁慈。）

d. It is | a pity / a regret / regrettable | that...should (居然)...　令人遗憾的是……居然……

例: It is a pity that he should be so rude.
（他这么粗鲁，真令人遗憾。）

＊见虚拟语气一章。

4. 意志动词如表“建议”（propose、recommend、suggest）、“要求”（ask、demand、desire、require、insist、request）、“命令”（order、command）、“规定”（rule、regulate）等，之后若有 that 从句作宾语时，that 从句中亦使用 should，而 should 往往亦予以省略。

例: He suggested that we (should) leave at once.
（他建议我们立刻离去。）

They demanded that he (should) be quiet.
（他们要求他安静。）

5. lest 表“以免”，为副词连词，所引导的从句亦使用 should，而 should 亦可予以省略。

例: He came early lest he (should) be late.
= He came early for fear that he might be late. (might 不可省略)
（他怕迟到而来得很早。）

＊见虚拟语气一章。

6. If 从句若表示与将来状况相反时，应使用 should，表“万一”之意。

例: If you should be late again, you will spoil the plan.
（你万一再迟到，就会破坏这个计划。）
＊见虚拟语气一章。

7. 在一般过去时中，要用 should 代替 shall。

例: I said to him, "I shall be at home this evening."
（我告诉他：“今晚我会在家。”）
I told him that I should be at home that evening.
（我告诉他那天晚上我会在家。）

8. should have + 过去分词

a. 表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，译成“早应……”。

例: If you had not helped me, I should have died.
（你当时要是没救我，我就死了。）
You should have done it earlier.
（你应该早点儿做好的。）
It was such a fine sight. You should have seen it.
（这么好的景色，你当时真该看看的。）

b. 表示“居然已经”，往往出现在下列结构中：

例: It is surprising that he should have passed the examination.
（令人惊讶的是他居然已通过了考试。）
It is a pity that he should have done such a stupid thing.
（真遗憾他竟然做了这么愚蠢的事。）

第六种 would

1. would 是 will（将要）的过去式，用以表示过去将来时。

例: He said, "I will try again."
（他说：“我会再试试。”）
He said that he would try again.
（他说他会再试试。）
Did you know when he would come?
（你当时知道他何时会来吗？）

9. can 与 not 连用时，不要写成 can not，而要写成 cannot 或 can't。

例: He can not write letters. (非习惯用法)
→ He cannot (或 can't) write letters. (✓)
（他不会写信。）

> **注意**
> could 与 not 连用时，则应写成 could not 或 couldn't，不要写成 couldnot。

10. 有关 can 的惯用语：

a. I | can but / can only | do so.
（我只能这么做。）

b. I cannot but laugh.
= I cannot help but laugh.
= I cannot help laughing.
（我忍不住大笑。）
* 上列三句中，cannot but 之后接原形动词，cannot help but 之后亦接原形动词，而 cannot help 之后则接动名词，此时等于 resist（抗拒）或 stop（停止）之意。

c. We cannot be too careful in choosing friends.
（我们在择友时要愈小心愈好/我们择友时再小心也不为过。）

d. I couldn't care less.
（我一点儿都不在乎。——我已经不在乎到了极点，因此我不能低于比现在不在乎的程度了。）

e. I couldn't agree more.
（我同意极了。——我已经同意到了极点，因此我不能比现在更加地同意了。）

第八种　may、might

助动词 may 之后接原形动词，有下列意思及用法：

1. 表“许可”，译成“可以”。

例: You may take whatever you like.
（你喜欢什么就可以拿什么。）

May I go home?
（我可以回家吗？）

动词变化为 raise、raised、raised、raising。
arise *vi.* 起因于（与 from 连用）
动词变化为 arise、arose、arisen、arising。
arouse *vt.* 激起
动词变化为 arouse、aroused、aroused、arousing。

注意
raise 和 arouse 为及物动词，其后须接宾语，亦可用被动语态。

例: He rose at 7 every morning.
= He got up at 7 every morning.
（他每天早上 7 点起床。）

The sun raises in the east. (×)
→ The sun rises in the east. (✓)
（太阳从东方升起。）

Accidents	arise from result from	carelessness.

（意外源于粗心。）

Raise your hand if you have any questions.
（有任何问题请举手。）

Many cattle are raised on this farm.
（这座农场饲养了许多牛。）

His bitter words aroused my anger.
（他尖锐的话语引起了我的愤怒。）

4. hang：

hang *vt. & vi.* 挂
动词变化为 hang、hung、hung、hanging。
hang *vt.* 吊死
动词变化为 hang、hanged、hanged、hanging。

例: The picture hangs on the wall.
= The picture is hung on the wall.
（图片挂在墙上。）

Tom Dooley was hanged.
（汤姆·杜利被吊死了。）

The picture is hanged on the wall. (×)
The robber was hung. (×)
They hanged the murderer yesterday.
（昨天他们把凶手吊死了。）

5. fly、flow：

fly *vi.* 飞

动词变化为 fly、flew、flown、flying。

flow *vi.* 流

动词变化为 flow、flowed、flowed、flowing。

例: The airplane flew high in the sky.
（飞机在高空中飞行。）

This is the place from which the river flows.
（这就是这条河流出的地方——发源地。）

The bird flowed all the way here from Canada. (×，应改为 flew)
（鸟儿从加拿大一路飞到这儿。）

6. take、bring：

take （从此处）拿走

bring （从别处）拿来

例: Take the book to the library, please.
（请把这本书拿去图书馆。）

Bring them back here.
（把他们带回这里来。）

Take him in my office. (×，Take 应改为 Bring)
（带他到我的办公室来。）

Take it with you when you go there.
（你去那里时，把这带着。）

Bring it with you when you come here.
（你来这里时，把它带着。）

7. refuse：

refuse 拒绝

a. refuse + 名词

例: He refused my suggestion.
（他拒绝我的建议。）

b. refuse to + 原形动词

例: He refused going with me. (×)

→ He refused to go with me. (✓)
（他拒绝和我走。）

类似此结构的短语动词如下：

	call for	要求；需要	go over	复习
	come across	偶然遇见	go through	检查
=	run into		keep on	继续
=	meet...by chance		look after	照顾
	get over	复原	look for	找寻
=	recover from		look into	调查
	get through	做完	take after	像

14. “动词 + 介词 + 名词（代词）”的重要短语：

a. agree on...　就（条约、定义）达成协议

例: We finally agreed on the contract.

= We finally reached an agreement on the contract.

（我们终于就条约达成了协议。）

b. agree to + 事物　同意某事

例: I agree to his coming here.

（我同意他来。）

c. agree with + 人　同意某人

例: I agree with him on this point.

（关于这点，我同意他的看法。）

d. consist of...　包括……

例: This class consists of 10 students.

= This class is composed of 10 students.

= This class is made up of 10 students.

（这班共有 10 个学生。）

e. argue with + 人　与某人争论
argue over + 事物　争论某事
approve of + 事物　赞同某事物
care for　喜欢
complain about / of　抱怨
consent to　同意
comment on　评论
count on　依赖
= depend on
= rely on

laugh at　　取笑
hear from　　听到某人的音讯；接到某人的来信

15.“动词 + 宾语 + 介词 + 宾语”的重要短语：

例：Add this number to that number.
（将此数与该数相加。）

He blamed me for the fault.
（他把错归咎于我。）

I congratulated him on his success.
（我恭贺他的成功。）

He explained it to me.
（他向我解释此事。）

He won't excuse me for being rude.
（他不会原谅我的粗鲁行为。）

16. 重要的三词（三词以上）短语动词：

例：He fell in love with Mary.
（他爱上了玛丽。）

He will get in touch with her when he goes to New York.
联络
（他到纽约时会和她联络。）

He has made up his mind (= decided) to study hard.
（他已下决心要用功学习。）

Who takes charge of this class?
掌理
= Who is in charge of this class?
（这个班由谁负责？）

He'll take care of / look after my children when I go on a trip.
（我去旅行时，他会照顾我的小孩。）

Students have complete access to books in the library.
有完全使用权
（学生可以任意使用图书馆内的书。）

I look forward to seeing you soon.
（我期盼能很快见到你。）

Would you mind ~~if~~ ~~you~~ ~~opened~~ the door?
(同主语)　　　　opening
（你介不介意去把门打开？）

19. “动词 + 动名词”的结构：

下列动词只能接动名词，不能接不定式。

admit	承认	mention	提到
avoid	避免	pardon	原谅
appreciate	感激；体会	miss	想念
consider	考虑	practise	练习
delay	延期	= practice	
mind	介意	quit	停止
deny	否认	risk	冒险
detest	憎恨	postpone	延迟
enjoy	喜欢	resent	愤恨
escape	逃避	regret	后悔
excuse	原谅	keep	保持
finish	结束	finish	结束
forgive	原谅	imagine	想象

例: I really appreciate your helping me.
（我实在感谢你的帮助。）

He considered studying another language.
（他考虑学习另一种语言。）

He has finished writing this book.
（他已经写完这本书。）

I enjoy talking with you.
（我喜欢和你谈话。）

He practiced to speak English every day. (×)
→ He practiced speaking English every day. (✓)
（他每天练习说英语。）

20. prevent sb from V-ing　阻止某人从事……

例: The heavy rain prevented me to get to work on time. (×)
→ The heavry rain prevented me from getting to work on time. (✓)
（大雨使我不能准时上班。）

注意

以下动词结构与 prevent 相同：

例: I'm determined to go on with the project even if I may run into many setbacks.
（即使我可能会遭遇许多挫折，我心意已决非要继续执行该计划不可。）

25. afford:

afford 表"有能力买"、"有能力从事"，使用本动词时须与助动词 can 或 cannot 连用。afford 之后可接名词或不定式短语作宾语，结构如下：

can / cannot afford + 名词　　有/无能力买/从事……

can / cannot afford to V　　有/无能力从事……

例: I can afford that car. (佳)
= I can afford to buy that car.
（我买得起那辆车。）

Since he has lots of money, he can afford a new house.
= Since he has lots of money, he can afford to buy a new house.
（由于他钱多，因此可以买得起新房子。）

The poor boy didn't afford to go to school. (×)
→ The poor boy couldn't afford to go to school. (✓)
（这个穷孩子读不起书。）

26. wait、await:

a. wait 表"等候"，为不及物动词，须与介词 for 连用，方可接宾语，即：

wait for sb/sth　　等候某人/某事物

例: I'll wait for you at the station.
（我会在车站等你。）

We are still waiting for the weather to improve.
（我们仍在等候天气转好。）

但 wait 亦可作及物动词，专门用在下列短语中：

wait one's turn　　（耐心）等候某人的机会

例: I'm waiting my turn to take revenge.
（我正在等候报复的机会。）

b. await 亦表"等候"，为及物动词，之后多接表"事物"的名词作宾语。

await sth　　等候某事物
= wait for sth

例: We're still awaiting your reply.
= We're still waiting for your reply.
（我们仍在等候你的回答。）

27. succeed、fail:

a. succeed 可作不及物动词，表“成功”，须与介词 in 连用，方可接名词或动名词作宾语，形成下列短语：

succeed in + 名词/动名词　　在……获得成功/成功地……

例: John succeeded in business after years of hard work.
（经过多年的努力，约翰经商成功了。）

How many of you have succeeded in passing the test?
（你们之中有几个人考试考及格了？）

b. succeed 亦可作及物动词，表“继承”，以人作宾语，形成下列短语：

succeed + 人 + as...　　继承某人担任……的职位

例: John succeeded his father as president of this company.
（约翰继承父亲担任本公司的总裁。）

c. fail 可作不及物动词，表“失败”，之后不可接“in + 动名词”，而接不定式短语，作副词用，修饰 fail。

例: He failed in passing the test. (×)
→ He failed to pass the test. (✓)
（他这次考试没考及格。）

d. fail 亦可作及物动词，表“未通过（考试）”、“使（某人）不及格”或“辜负（某人）”。

例: He failed the test.
= He failed to pass the test.
（他这次考试没考及格。）

The teacher failed one-third of his students.
= The teacher flunked one-third of his students.
（老师让三分之一的学生不及格。）

You are the only person I trust. Don't fail me.
（你是我唯一信赖的人。别令我失望/辜负我。）

13. expect 的用法：

I expect to go on a trip this summer.

（我盼望今夏去旅行。）

I expect you to go on a trip this summer.

（我指望你今年夏天去旅行。）

I don't expect much of you.

（我对你不抱很大的期望。）

I expect some changes in the plan.

（我预期该项计划将有所改变。）

14. speculate about... 深思……/思虑……

= speculate on...

15. used to V 过去曾经……

be used to V-ing 习惯于……

16. prefer A to B 喜欢 A 胜于 B

17. please 若表“请”，视为副词，其后接原形动词：

肯定句：Please come here at 8.

Please to come here at 8. (×)

（请你 8 点来。）

否定句：Please don't make noise.

Please not make noise. (×)

（请不要发出噪音。）

惯用语：Would you please + 原形动词? 请你……好吗？

Would you please open the door?

Would you please not open the door?

Would you please not to open the door? (×)

18. be to 可表“预定、义务、可能”。

a. 预定 (= be expected to)

He is to be here by nine this evening.

（预定他今晚 9 点前来此地。）

b. 义务 (= must)

He is to finish all the work before he leaves.

(= must)

（他必须在走之前完成所有的工作。）

第六章　时态及语态

概说

记得以前念初中的时候，每次上英语课，就提不起兴趣，主要是因为乡下的孩子比较保守，不敢跟着老师大声念，尤其有些英语单词念起来颇像闽南语中的脏话。每每在亲朋好友面前“秀”一两个英语单词，就会被回骂一声“夭寿”，害得我一直不敢开口说英语。及至老师教到时态时，就被那些复杂（当时觉得）的规则吓坏了，从此再也不学英语了。18 之后，发誓要把英语学好时，我就强迫自己每天一定看 16 小时的英语。我的方法无它，就是勤背诵、勤查词典。不知不觉中，文章愈来愈看得懂。但练习写作时，就发现自己最大的毛病乃时态运用不当，频频出错。于是，我就买了一本虹桥书局出版的英语版 *Mastering American English*。这本语法书用浅显的例句，把时态变化交待得很清楚。从此，我如鱼得水。阅读文章时，就特别注意时态的用法，久而久之，便习惯其中用法，而且我也不必再看任何语法参考书了。

说了那么多话，无非希望同学们明白，学英语，一如学其他外语，急不得也。有道是“慢工出细活。”希望同学们一方面细看这本英语语法书，一方面多看英语文章，以印证赖老师在书中所说的重点。从此以后，你的英语一定和我的一样好，甚至超越我。耐心地努力下去吧！

第一节 时态

1. 时态的种类：

a. 一般时：

1) 一般现在时：He writes a letter every day.
（他每天写信。）

2) 一般过去时：He wrote a letter yesterday.
（他昨天写一封信。）

3) 一般将来时：He will write a letter tomorrow.
（他明天要写一封信。）

b. 完成时：

1) 现在完成时：He has written the letter.
（他已经写好这封信。）

2) 过去完成时：He had written the letter when I came.
（我回来时他早就把信写好了。）

3) 将来完成时：He will have written the letter before I come.
（我回来之前，他就会把信写好了。）

c. 进行时：

1) 现在进行时：He is writing a letter now.
（他现在正在写信。）

2) 过去进行时：He was writing a letter when I came.
（我来时，他正在写信。）

3) 将来进行时：He will be writing a letter when I come.
（我来时，他将正在写信。）

d. 完成进行时：

1) 现在完成进行时：He has been writing a letter for two hours.
（他已经写信写了两个小时。）

2) 过去完成进行时：When I called, he had been writing a letter for two hours.
（我打电话来时，他信已持续写了两个小时了。）

2. 使用一般现在时的时机：

主语 + 一般现在时动词

a. 表知觉、状态、所有：

例: I smell something burning.
（我闻到东西烧焦的味道。）

You look worried.
（你看起来愁眉苦脸。）

This medicine tastes bitter to me.
（对我而言，这个药很苦。）

He has a book.
（他有一本书。）

Your hands feel cold.
（你的手摸起来很冰冷。）

He is a student.
（他是学生。）

I see a man standing there.
（我看到一个人站在那里。）

b. 表习惯性的动作：

例: He goes to school every day.
（他每天上学。）

He writes a letter every day.
（他每天写信。）

He always takes a bus home.
（他总是乘公交车回家。）

注意

表习惯性的动作常以时间副词修饰。

例: It rains a lot in summer.
（夏天雨量大。）

They seldom take a trip.
（他们很少去旅行。）

千万不可造这种句子：

He writes a letter. (劣)
（他写信。）

He comes back. (劣)
(他回来。)

因这两个例子无时间副词修饰，故不是习惯性的动作，因此无意义。

c. 表真理、事实、格言：

例: The sun rises in the east.
(太阳从东方升起。)

He who is lazy is doomed to failure. (to 是介词)

= He who is lazy is doomed to fail. (to fail 是不定式)
(凡是懒惰的人注定要失败。)

Honesty is the best policy.
(诚实是上策。)

d. 表将来:

begin、start、arrive、leave、come、go 等动词可用一般现在时表将来。

例: They arrive tomorrow.
(他们明天到。)

The meeting begins at 7.
(会议 7 点开始。)

They start the day after tomorrow.
(他们后天出发。)

Does he come tomorrow?
(他明天要来吗？)

3. 使用一般过去时的时机：

主语 + 一般过去时动词

a. 表过去的动作、习惯、状态：

例: I saw him yesterday.
(我昨天看到他。)

He always rose early in the morning.
(他以前都很早起床。)

He was born in 1970.
(他于 1970 年出生。)

If I see him, I will tell him the truth.
一般现在时　一般将来时
（我若见到他，就会把真相告诉他。）

Once I receive the letter, I will let you know.
一般现在时　一般将来时
（我一旦收到信，就会让你知道。）

千万不要造下列的句子：

When I will have money, I will buy a car. (×)

I won't buy a car unless I will have money. (×)

b. is / am / are going to + 原形动词 = will + 原形动词　将要……

例: He is going to come.

= He will come.

（他将要来。）

5. 使用现在完成时的时机：

主语 + have + 过去分词（have 译成“已经”或“曾经”）

a. 用以表示到现在为止完成的动作：

例: I have just finished my homework.

（我刚做完功课。）

She has already come.

（她已经来了。）

He has gone to New York.

（他已到纽约去了。——人在纽约）

He hasn't gone to work yet.

（他还没去工作。）

b. 用以表示到现在为止的经验：

例: I have met him several times.

（我见过他几次。）

I have never met such a man as he.

（我从未见过像他这样的人。）

c. 用以表示到现在为止仍在继续的动作或状态：

例: She has lived here for 10 years. (And she still lives here.)
（她已经在这里住 10 年了。——她仍然住在这里。）

She has studied English since 2000. (And she still studies English.)
（她从 2000 年就开始学英语。——她现在还在学。）

> **注意**
>
> 表"曾去过"的经历时，用"have been"，而非"have gone"。
>
> 例: He has gone to Hong Kong.
> （他已经到香港去了。）
>
> (And he is now in Hong Kong.)
> （他现在在香港。）
>
> He has been to Hong Kong.
> = He has gone to Hong Kong and come back again.
> （他曾去过香港。）

6. 使用过去完成时的时机：

主语 + had + 过去分词（had 译成"已经"或"曾经"）

用以表示截至过去某时为止所完成的动作或经历：

例: He had studied English for 10 years before he left for the States.
（他赴美之前已学过 10 年英语。）

He had already left when I came.
（我来时他已离开了。）

He was angry because he hadn't seen Mary.
（他没看到玛丽，因此生气。）

He told me that he had seen the movie once.
（他告诉我，这部电影他已看过一次。）

> **注意**
>
> 过去完成时不能单独存在，要与另一个一般过去时从句或表过去之副词短语连用，即在过去不同时间发生的两种动作：
>
> 先发生的动作 ⟶ 用过去完成时表示
>
> 后发生的动作 ⟶ 用一般过去时表示
>
> 例: I lost the book which my father had given me.
> （我弄丢了父亲给我的书——我父亲先给我书，我后来弄丢了。）

7. 使用将来完成时的时机：

主语 + will have + 过去分词（will have 译成“将已经”）

用以表示到将来某时为止所完成或仍在继续的动作或经历等：

例：He will have arrived in Chicago by this time tomorrow.
（明天这个时候，他将已抵达芝加哥。）

When you come (或 By the time you come), everything will have been finished.
（你来的时候，每一件事将已全部完成。）

He will have lived here for 10 years by the end of this month.
（到月底，他就在此地住满 10 年了。）

8. 使用现在进行时的时机：

主语 + is / am / are + 现在分词（is / am / are 译成“正在”）

a. 用以表示现在正在做的动作：

例：He is writing a letter.
（他正在写一封信。）

What are you doing?
（你正在做什么？）

He is taking a trip now.
（他现在正在旅游。）

I am doing the laundry.
（我正在洗衣服。）

b. 用以表示即将发生的动作，常与表将来的副词连用，此时 is / am / are 译成“即将”：

例：He is coming today.
= He will be coming today.
（他即将于今天前来。）

They are leaving soon.
= They will be leaving soon.
（他们很快就要离开。）

9. 使用过去进行时的时机：

主语 + was / were + 现在分词（was / were 译成“正在”）

a. 用以表示过去某时正在做的动作：

例: He was studying English then.
（那时他正在读英语。）

He was taking a bath when you called.
（你打电话来的时候，他正在洗澡。）

b. 表一般过去时中即将发生的事：

例: He was dying.
= He was going to die.
= He was about to die.
（那时他快死了。）

10. 使用将来进行时的时机：

主语 + will be + 现在分词（will be 译成“将在”）

用以表示于将来某时将进行的动作：

例: He will be studying English (at) this time tomorrow.
（明天此时，他将在读英语。）

11. 使用现在完成进行时的时机：

主语 + have / has been + 现在分词（have / has been 译成“一直都在”）

用以表示一直继续到现在且仍将继续下去的动作：

例: She has been working with this company for 5 years.
（她在这家公司服务已有 5 年的时间。——她仍将服务下去。）

They have been standing here since 7 this morning.
（他们从早上 7 点就一直站在这儿。——现在还在站着。）

He has been teaching at this school since 2001.
（他从 2001 年就一直在这个学校任教。——他仍将继续教。）

12. 使用过去完成进行时的时机：

主语 + had been + 现在分词（had been 译成“一直都在”）

用以表示一直继续到过去某时，而当时仍在继续进行的动作。与过去完成时一样，过去完成进行时不能单独存在，须与一般过去时连用：

例: I had been sleeping when he came.
（他来的时候，我仍在睡觉。）

He told us that he had been studying German since 2001.
（他告诉我们他从 2001 年起就一直学德语。）

13. 使用将来完成进行时的时机：
主语 + will have been + 现在分词（will have been 译成"将一直在"）
表一直继续到将来某时，而仍将继续进行的动作：

例: I will have been teaching English for ten years by the end of this year.
（到今年年底，我教英语将已有 10 年了。）

14. 时态的前后一致：

a. 主句若为一般现在时，从属从句除过去完成时、过去完成进行时不能用以外，其他时态皆可用。

例: I think
- he has come.
- he is coming.
- he already came.
- he will have done it by the end of this month.
- he was singing a song when I came yesterday.
- he had come. (×)
- he had been sleeping. (×)
- he had been sleeping when I came.
(✓，因有一般过去时之状语从句"when I came")

b. 主句为一般过去时时，则从属从句不得用表现在或将来的时态，但可使用一般过去时、过去完成时、过去进行时、过去完成进行时。

例: I thought
- he was nice.
- he had come back.
- he would come back.
- he was working hard.
- he had been working hard.
- he will come back. (×)
- he has been working hard. (×)

c. 从属从句表示真理时，无论主句是过去、现在或将来时，该从句都用一般现在时。

例: They knew that the sun rises in the east.
（他们知道太阳从东边升起。）

We know that the sun rises in the east.
（我们知道太阳从东边升起。）

She will know that the sun rises in the east.
（她将会知道太阳从东方升起。）

15. “for + 一段时间”与完成时的关系：

for during in through down through over	the	past last	five years	过去 5 年来

= since five years ago　　自从 5 年前起

这些短语与现在完成时或现在完成进行时连用。

例: I have been studying English for the past two weeks.
（过去两个星期来，我都一直在学英语。）

16. since 与完成时的关系：

a. since 表“自从”时，可作介词，之后接名词或动名词；since 亦可作副词连词，之后接主语及动词，引导一般过去时的状语从句。不论 since 作介词或副词连词，所修饰的主句应用现在完成时或现在完成进行时，句型如下：

主语 + have / has + 过去分词 + since...　　自从……以来就一直……

或：主语 + have / has been + 现在分词 + since...

例: I have lived here since 2000.
（自 2000 年起我就一直住在这里。）

I have been studying English since I went to college.
（自我念大学后，我就一直在学英语。）

b. since 之后须接明确的某时间作宾语，不可接一段时间作宾语。

例: Peter has lived here since two years. (×，two years 是一段时间)

→ Peter has lived here since 2002. (✓，2002 是明确的某时间)
（彼得自 2002 年就一直住在这里。）

c. since 之后若有一段时间，则须在一段时间之后接 ago。

例: Peter has lived here since two years ago. (✓)
（彼得自两年前起就一直住在这里。）

= Peter has lived here for two years.
（彼得在这里已住了两年了。）

d. 现在完成时或现在完成进行时的动词与“for + 一段时间”连用时，该动词所表示的动作必须可接续进行，否则就不可与“for + 一段时间”连用。

例: I have lived here for five years. (✓)
（我在这里连续住了 5 年。）

理由:
我每天住在这里，持续住了 5 年，故 live（住）表示的动作可持续进行。

例: He has been teaching English for two months. (✓)
（他教英语已有两个月了。）

理由:
他每天都教英语，持续教了两个月，故 teach（教）表示的动作可持续进行。

例: He has died for two months. (×)
（他死了 3 年了。）

理由:
他每天都死一次，持续死了 3 年——不合逻辑，故 die（死）表示的动作无法持续进行，不可与 for three years 连用。应改为：

例: He has died. (✓)
（他已过世了。）
He has married Jane for twenty years. (×)
（他跟简结婚已有 20 年了。）

理由:
他每天都娶简一次，持续娶了 20 年——不合逻辑，故 marry（与……结婚）表示的动作无法持续进行，不可与 for twenty years 连用，应改为：

例: He has married Jane. (✓)
（他已娶了简。）

e. 上列动作无法持续的动词，若采下列结构时，则可与 since 连用：
It is + 一段时间 + since...
例: It is three years since he died. (✓)
= Three years have passed since he died.
（他过世已 3 年了。）
It is twenty years since he married Jane. (✓)
= Twenty years have passed since he married Jane.
（他与简结婚已有 20 年了。）

（他昨天就该走了。—— 但他当时并没走。）

2. but 之后从句中动词为一般过去时“there was...”，故前面的从句可用过去完成时。

I had intended to go, but I had no money.

= I intended to have gone, but I had no money.

= I would have gone, but I had no money.

（我本来想走了，但却没钱。）

3. a. happen 为不及物动词，故不可用被动语态。

   b. (C) 助动词是过去时，可是事情现在已发生，故时态不对。

   c. (D) 本句为疑问句，故不必用“did + 原形动词”来强调。

4. a. (B) 主句 I thought 为一般过去时，故从属从句不可能用一般将来时。

   b. already 应置于完成时助动词 had 之后。

   c. (A) rang 应改为过去分词 rung。

5. a. (A) 时态错误，因 but 之后的主句是一般过去时，故从属从句不可能用一般将来时。

   b. (B) was coming = would come

   c. (C) coming 不可能用在完成进行时中。

   He has come. (√)

   （他已来了。）

   He has been coming. (×)

   （他一直都在来。）

6. “must have + p.p.”表示对过去事实之推测，表“一定已经/曾经……”。

7. 主句为一般将来时时，条件句一定是一般现在时。

8. before 从句的动作一定是最后发生，故用一般过去时。

9. as yet　　至目前为止（= so far）

   本短语常用于否定意味的现在完成时句子中。

10. before 引导的从句若为一般过去时，为了表示更早之前的行为，主句常用过去完成时。

11. 表将来某时正在进行的动作，用将来进行时。

12. 表示比一般过去时中的动作更早发生并且一直持续的事情，用过去完成进行时。

13. 表示从过去至今仍在持续的状态或行为，用现在完成进行时。

14. 主句为一般将来时，故 when 引导的条件句应为一般现在时。

15. The moment 视作连词，等于 As soon as，表“一……就……”，所引导的状语从句是一般过去时时，主句亦应为一般过去时。

16. while（当……时），引导的状语从句表示持续的状态或行为，故常用进行时。
17. 表时间的状语从句中，必须用一般现在时代替一般将来时。
18. 本句中 but 之后的主句虽为一般将来时，但名词性从句中的事件为过去发生，故用一般过去时。
19. since 引导时间状语从句时，该从句用一般过去时，主句用现在完成（进行）时。
20. "by + 时间名词" 表"等到……时"，所引导的从句或短语在句中出现时，主句常用将来完成时或过去完成时。
21. (A) will 应改为 would。
22. (A) 应改为 may have migrated（当时很可能移至）或 must have migrated（当时一定移至），表对过去事实的推测。originally 表示"原先"，是叙述过去概念，故不可用现在完成时。
23. (B) has become 应改为 became，叙述过去的事实用一般过去时。
24. (B) drank 应改为 drinking。
    He has been sitting...and drinking...
25. (B) live 应改为 lived。
    before he died 暗示 He has already died and is no longer in the world. 故 who lives 应改为一般过去时 who lived。
26. (B) 应改为 to develop。
    不定式之前若有完成时，不得再用完成时。
27. (C) 应改为 have never learned，过去完成时不得与一般现在时连用，要与一般过去时连用。
    I think he had gone. (×)
→ I think he has gone. (✓)
（我想他走了。）
    I wish he had gone. (✓，wish 之后的从句表与过去相反的虚拟语气时，可采用过去完成时)
（真希望他走了。）
28. (B) 应改为 had been bitten。
    last time 引导的从句为一般过去时，故主句应为过去完成时。
29. (C) 应改为 considered。
    两句发生在过去的同时，故应用一般过去时。
30. (C) never knew 应改为 have never known。
    (B) 为现在完成时，故时间包括到现在，因此 (C) 不能用一般过去时。

A Quick Note

第一节　纯条件虚拟语气

1. 基本句型:

使用纯条件虚拟语气时，if 从句的动词用现在时，主句则是现在时助动词加上动词原形。

句型如下：

If + 主语 + 一般现在时动词, 主语 + will / may / can / should / shall / must / ought to + 原形动词

例: If he is here, I will beat him.
（如果他在这儿，我会揍他。）

If anyone makes such a mistake, he must be punished.
（谁要犯了这样的错误，就要受处罚。）

If he comes, you should (ought to) tell him the truth.
（如果他来了，你就该告诉他事情的真相。）

2. 使用时机及要点:

a. 纯条件虚拟语气的 if 从句中，时态为一般现在时，表示若 if 的条件存在，就会有预期的结果。在上列的第一个例句中，"If he is here，I will beat him." 即告诉我们，"他要是在这儿，我就会揍他。" 至于他现在是否在这儿，我们不知道。我们只知，"他要是在这儿" 这个条件存在的话，就会有 "我就会揍他" 的预期结果。

b. 表纯条件结构的副词连词不只 if 一种。once（一旦）、when（当）、before（在……之前）、as soon as（一旦）、unless（除非）等副词连词亦可构成条件句，其用法与 if 相同。

例: Once I have money, I will buy a car.
（have：现在时动词；will：现在时助动词）
（一旦我有钱，我会买辆车。）

When he finishes it, he may come.
（finishes：现在时动词；may：现在时助动词）
（他做完事，就可以来了。）

As soon as he arrives, I will let you know.
（arrives：现在时动词；will：现在时助动词）
（他一到，我就会让你知道。）

I will not do anything before he arrives.
现在时助动词 现在时动词
（他来之前，我什么都不会做。）

I won't do it unless you help me.
现在时助动词 现在时动词
（除非你帮助我，否则我不会去做这件事。）

c. 通常助动词不置于 if 从句中，只置于主句中。

例: If the news will be true, he may be safe. (×)
助动词 助动词
→ If the news is true, he may be safe. (√)
动词 助动词
（如果消息属实，他可能仍安然无恙。）

但 if 从句的主语为人时，可用 can（能够）、will（愿意）或 must（非要……不可）等助动词。

例: If he can come, I will be happy.
（如果他能来的话，我会很高兴。）

If he will do it, I will be happy.
= If he is willing to do it, I will be happy.
（如果他愿意做的话，我会很高兴。）

If he must do it, he should do it with care.
= If he has to do it, he should do it with care.
（如果他非做这事不可的话，他得小心做。）

注意
"If he will..." 的用法比较少见，最好避免。

d. 我们已知纯条件虚拟语气的主句中，助动词均用一般现在时，但 should 为唯一例外。因为 should 表示"应当"之意，等于 ought to，故不受限制。

例: If I have time, I should / ought to do it.
（如果我有时间，我应当去办这件事。）

第二节　与现在事实相反的虚拟语气

1. 基本句型：

使用本虚拟语气时，if 从句的动词用过去时，主句则用过去时助动词。句型如下：

If + 主语 + 一般过去时动词, 主语 + would / could / might / should / ought to + 原形动词

例: If I were rich, I would help you.
（如果我有钱，我就会帮助你。）

If he lived in my town, I could see him every day.
（如果他住在我住的镇上，我就能每天见到他了。）

2. 使用时机及要点：

a. 本虚拟语气旨在表示与现在事实相反的情况。换言之，一见到此类一般过去时句型出现时，我们就可确知事实并非如此。

例: If I were rich, I would help you.
（如果我有钱，我就会帮助你。）

= As I am not rich, I can't help you.
（因为我不是很有钱，所以无法帮助你。）

b. 不论主语为第几人称，if 从句中的 be 动词，均使用 were。

例: If you were in my shoes, what would you do?
（如果你站在我的立场，你会怎么做？）

If I was you, I wouldn't do it. (×)

→ If I were you, I wouldn't do it. (√)
（如果我是你，我不会做这事。）

c. 主句中的助动词一定为过去时助动词。

如：

will → would、may → might、can → could、shall → should 或 ought to。

但 must（必须）只能表示现在或将来的状况，故只用于纯条件的虚拟语气，而绝不可用于与现在事实或过去事实相反的虚拟语气中。

例: If you did it for me, I would be very happy.
（如果你为了我这样做，我会很高兴。）

If I could fly, I would fly to you.
（如果我能飞，我会飞向你。）

If you had money, you must help the poor. (×)
→ If you had money, you ought to help the poor. (√)
→ If you had money, you should help the poor. (√)
（如果你有钱，就应该帮助穷人。）

或: If you have money, you | must / should / ought to | help the poor. (√)

第三节 与过去事实相反的虚拟语气

1. 基本句型：

本虚拟语气中，if 从句的动词要用过去完成时，主句则是助动词的过去时再加上"have + 过去分词"，句型如下：

If + 主语 + had + p.p., 主语 + | would / could / might / should / ought to | + have + p.p.

例: If I had arrived earlier, I could have met him.
（要是当时我早点到，就可以见到他了。）

If he had taken your advice, he might have avoided the mistake.
（要是他当时听了你的劝告，就可能会避免这个错误了。）

2. 使用时机及要点：

a. 本虚拟语气旨在表示与过去事实相反的情况。换言之，一见到此类过去完成时的句型出现时，我们就确知当时的事实并非如此。

例: If I had arrived earlier, I could have met him.
（要是当时我早点到，就可以见到他了。）

→ As I didn't arrive earlier, I didn't meet him.
（因为当时我没有早点到，所以没见到他。）

If he had taken your advice, he would have avoided making the mistake.
（要是他当时听了你的劝告，就会避免犯了这个错。）

→ As he didn't take your advice, he made the mistake.
（因他当时没听从你的劝告，所以他犯了这个错。）

If you had been in my shoes, you might have done it.
（如果当时你是站在我的立场，你可能会做这件事。）

→ As you were not in my shoes, you didn't do it.
（因为当时你不是站在我的立场，所以你没有做这件事。）

b. 注意 if 从句中 had 与 had had 的区别：

1) 在"if + 主语 + had + 名词"的结构中，had 为一般过去时动词，译成"有"，此为表示与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。主句中置一般过去时的助动词即可。

例: If he had money, he would buy a car.

vt. n.

（如果他现在有钱，就会买车了。）

2) 在“if + 主语 + had + 过去分词”的结构中，had 为过去完成时助动词，译成“曾经”或“已经”，之后置过去分词，此时为表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。主句使用“过去时助动词 + have + 过去分词”。

例: If he had had money, he would have bought a car.

助 p.p.

（如果他当时有钱的话，就会买车了。）

故: If he had money, he would have bought a car. (×)

第五节　使用虚拟语气应注意事项

1. 表示强烈与真理相反的虚拟语气句型：

If + 主语 + were to + 原形 V, 主语 + would / could / might / should / ought to + 原形 V

例: 真理: The cat can't smile.
（猫不会笑。）

假设: If the cat were to smile, I would pass out.
（假如猫会笑，我会昏倒。）

真理: The sun doesn't rise in the west.
（太阳不会从西边升起。）

假设: If the sun were to rise in the west, how surprised these sunflowers would be.
（要是太阳从西边升起，这些向日葵会多么吃惊啊！）

2. if 的省略：

虚拟语气的 if 从句中，若有过去完成时助动词 had、或表“万一”的助动词 should 或是 were 出现时，可将这些词类置于主语前，而将 if 省略。

a. had

例: If he had done it, he would have felt sorry.
= Had he done it, he would have felt sorry.
（如果他当时做了这件事，他会后悔的。）

b. should

例: If he should tell lies, I would punish him.
= Should he tell lies, I would punish him.
（万一他说谎，我会处罚他。）

c. were

例: If he were lazy, he might fail.
= Were he lazy, he might fail.
（如果他懒惰，就可能会失败。）

= He did it carefully for fear of making the same mistake again.
（他很谨慎地做这件事，唯恐再次犯同样的错。）

7. as if... = as though...　仿佛……

as if 或 as though 均为副词连词，引导状语从句，使用时有三种时态：

a. 表极大的可能 → 动词使用一般时态

例: It looks as if (as though) it is going to rain.
（看起来好像要下雨了。）

b. 表与现在事实相反 → 动词使用一般过去时

例: Mr. Wang loves me as if (as though) I were his own child.
（王先生爱我就像我是他的孩子一样。）

c. 表与过去事实相反 → 动词使用过去完成时

例: He looked as if (as though) nothing had happened.
（他看起来就像什么事都没发生过一样。）

注意

as if 或 as though 之后亦可接不定式短语，表示即将发生的状况。

例: She opened her lips as if (she was going) to speak.
（她张开双唇好像有话要说。）

8. What if...should...?　要是……的话会怎样/要怎么办?

本句型乃表示对将来状况存疑的虚拟语气。if 从句多置助动词 should。

例: What if he should come?

=	What	might happen could I (we) do	if he should come?

（要是他来了，会怎样/怎么办？）

What if it should rain?

=	What	might happen could I (we) do	if it should rain?

（要是下雨了，怎么办？）

＊what if 之后亦可用一般现在时，故上列例句亦可改写如下:

What if he comes?

= What shall we do if he comes?

13. I hope 与祈使句的关系：

I hope 接 that 从句时，从句中可使用助动词 may，形成祈使句。此时将 I hope that 删除，将 may 置于原 that 从句的主语之前，动词仍用原形动词，原句号改为感叹号。

例: I hope (that) he may live long.
= May he live long!
（愿他长命百岁！）

I hope you may pass the exam.
= May you pass the exam!
（祝你通过考试！）

> **注意**
>
> a. 以 God 为主语时，可省略 may。
>
> 例: I hope God may bless you. (外国人实际并不使用本句)
> = May God bless you! (外国人常用本句)
> = God bless you! (外国人最常用本句)
> （上帝保佑你！）
>
> b. 表“国家/君主万岁”时，可采用倒装结构。
>
> 例: I hope the king may live long. (外国人实际并不使用本句)
> = May the king live long! (外国人常用本句)
> = Long live the king! (外国人最常用本句)
> （国王万岁！）

14. wish 和 hope 的异同：

a. 相同部分：

1) 均可用不定式作宾语

例: I wish to travel abroad.
= I hope to travel abroad.
（我希望能出国旅游。）

2) 亦可作不及物动词，与介词 for 连用，表“期望获得”之意，以名词作其宾语。

例: I wish for a chance to try it. (常用)
= I hope for a chance to try it. (罕)
（我希望能有机会尝试一下。）

I	wish hope	a chance to try it. (×)

b. 不同部分：

表“祝福”时，只能使用 wish，之后接两个名词或代词作其宾语。

例: I wish you a good time.

（祝你们玩得愉快。）

I wish my parents longevity.

（祝我父母亲长命百岁。）

I hope you a good time. (×)

但: I hope (that) you (may) have a good time. (√)

（我希望你们能玩得愉快。）

I hope my parents longevity. (×)

但: I hope (that) my parents can live long. (√)

（我希望父母能长命百岁。）

15. 对过去事物的猜测的三种句型：

a. must have + 过去分词　　一定曾经……

例: He is learned; he must have received a good education.

（他博学多闻，一定受过良好的教育。）

b. may have + 过去分词　　可能曾经……

例: He looks tired; he may have stayed up late last night.

（他看起来很疲倦，可能昨晚熬夜到很晚。）

c. cannot have + 过去分词　　不可能曾经……

例: He is honest; he cannot have stolen Mary's money.

（他是老实人，不可能偷了玛丽的钱。）

注意

若表猜测的结构为疑问句时，要用“Can...have...?”句型。

例: May he have done it? (×)

→ Can he have done it? (√)

（他可能做了这样的事吗？）

21. that 从句作同位语：

that 从句若是置于意志动词变成的名词之后，而与该名词形成同位语时，that 从句中也要使用助动词 should，而 should 往往予以省略。

例：It is my suggestion that he (should) study abroad.
（我建议他出国念书。）

They raised a proposal that the meeting (should) be postponed.
（他们提议延期开会。）

It is John's desire that someone (should) help him write the letter.
（约翰期望有人能帮他写信。）

EXERCISE

I. 请选出一个正确的答案：

1. What would you do if you ______ a million dollars?
   (A) have　(B) have had　(C) had　(D) shall have
2. Even if I ______, I wouldn't.
   (A) can　(B) shall　(C) could　(D) will
3. If he were alive, he ______ twenty years old now.
   (A) will be　(B) would be
   (C) would have been　(D) is
4. I don't think you ______ me even if I told you the truth.
   (A) will believe　(B) would have believed
   (C) would believe　(D) believed
5. If I had not called for a doctor, your friend _____.
   (A) had died　(B) will have died
   (C) will die　(D) would have died
6. I would have married her if she ______ such an extravagant girl.
   (A) were not　(B) wouldn't be
   (C) would not have been　(D) hadn't been
7. If it ______ convenient, let's meet at nine o'clock.
   (A) is　(B) being　(C) was　(D) were
8. If he ______ in a day or two, I would wait for him.
   (A) will return　(B) returns　(C) were to return　(D) had returned
9. If he ______ late, give him the message.
   (A) were coming　(B) would come
   (C) should come　(D) were come

29. I sometimes wish that my university <u>is</u> <u>as large as</u> the State University because our facilities are <u>more</u> limited <u>than</u> theirs.

(A) is (B) as large as (C) more (D) than

30. You <u>have confessed</u> that you <u>are</u> sorry for your rebellion. So I <u>will</u> recommend that you <u>will not be punished</u>.

(A) have confessed (B) are (C) will (D) will not be punished

标准答案

1. (C)	2. (C)	3. (B)	4. (C)	5. (D)	6. (D)	7. (A)	8. (C)	9. (C)	10. (A)
11. (B)	12. (B)	13. (A)	14. (C)	15. (D)	16. (D)	17. (C)	18. (C)	19. (B)	20. (C)
21. (D)	22. (C)	23. (C)	24. (A)	25. (A)	26. (C)	27. (C)	28. (C)	29. (A)	30. (D)

习题解说

1. What 之后有助动词 would，故空格内应置入一般过去时动词 had，形成与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。
2. 主句为过去时助动词 wouldn't，空格内亦应置入过去时助动词 could，形成与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。
3. If 从句有过去时动词 were，故空格内应置入 had，形成与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。
4. even if 引导的状语从句有过去时动词，故空格内应置入 would believe，形成与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。
5. If 从句为过去完成时，为与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，故应选 (D)。
6. 主句有“would have + p.p.”，故 if 从句应为过去完成时。
7. 此为纯条件句，并不表示与事实相反，故用一般现在时。
8. if + 主语 + were to V, 主语 + were to + V

   本结构表示将来不太可能发生的假设。
9. should 用于虚拟语气的 if 从句中表“万一”。

10. if 从句中若有 had，可移至句首代替 if。

11. | without / but for | N + 虚拟语气从句　　若非……

本句表与过去事实相反。

12. 同上。

13. Had it not been that...　　当时要不是……

= If it had not been that...

14. I wish + 虚拟语气从句　　但愿……

本句表与现在事实相反。

15. if only 用法有二：

a. 假设法：表“但愿”。

| If only / I wish | I had seen you then.

（我要是当时见到你就好了。）

b. 条件句: 表“只要”。

| If only / As long as | I have money, I'll buy a car.

（只要我有钱，我就要买车。）

16. as if + | 一般过去时（与现在相反） / 过去完成时（与过去相反） |　　仿佛……

17. as it were　可以说是（多作插入语）

= so to speak

He is, | as it were / so to speak |, a hero.

（他可说是个英雄。）

18. | would rather / would sooner | + that 引导的一般过去时从句　　宁愿……

19. What if + 主语 + should + V?　　万一……怎么办？

20. 本句的前半部表示与过去事实相反，后半部表示与现在事实相反。

21. 本句乃与过去事实相反的假设，故 have 应改为 had。

...had we had their assistance.

= ...if we had had their assistance.

22. could 要改为 could have，表与过去事实相反。
23. will 应改为 would。
24. have 应改为过去完成时助动词 had。
25. if 从句中表与过去相反，故主句中的 will graduate 应改为 would have graduated。
26. would buy 应改为 would have bought。
27. 本句为纯条件句，并非与事实相反的假设，故主句中的 would have to 应改为 will have to。

注意:

If...is to be increased

= If...has to be increased

28. was 应改为 were。
29. is 应改为 were。
30. recommend 为意志动词，其后的 that 从句中须用“should + V”，而 should 通常省略，故 will not be punished 应改为 (should) not be punished。

第八章　副词

概说

1. -ly 形成的副词：

如：

形容词		副词
slow（慢的）	⟶	slowly（慢慢地）
quick（快的）	⟶	quickly（很快地）
easy（容易的）	⟶	easily（容易地）
main（主要的）	⟶	mainly（主要地）

但亦有些副词却自成一格。

如：

very（非常地）	ago（以前）
hard（努力地）	enough（充分地）
never（从不）	somewhat（有点儿）
somehow（不知怎地）	

有的甚至用现在分词作副词用，专门修饰形容词。

例: It's biting cold today.

adv.　adj.

（今天天气冷死了——冷得会咬人一样。）

= It's freezing cold today.

adv.　adj.

（今天天气冷死了——冷得要把人冻僵一样。）

It's boiling hot today.

adv.　adj.

（今天天气热死了——热得要把水都煮沸了。）

2. 有些形容词本身亦可当副词用：

例: awful:

His writing is awful.

adj.

（他的文章糟透了。）

* 此处 awful 是形容词，表“差劲的”。

He is awful mad.

adv. adj.

（他气坏了。）

* 此处 awful 是副词，表“非常地”，相当于 very 或 awfully。

fine:

The dress is fine.

adj.

（这件连衣裙挺不错的。）

* 此处 fine 是形容词，表“不错的”。

The dress suits me fine.

vt. adv.

（这件连衣裙挺适合我的。）

* 此处 fine 是副词，表“令人满意地”或“很棒地”，相当于 well。

3. good and 可作副词：

更绝的是，good 与 and 合在一起，竟然也成了副词，译成“非常”（等于 very）或“完全”（等于 completely），只置于 be 动词之后，修饰形容词。

例：It's good and hot today.

adv. adj.

（今天热死了。）

同学们看到这里，不禁会叫道：“惨了，副词有那么多奇怪的形态，叫我不知如何是好？”赖老师认为，你无需害怕，也不必一一死记所有的副词形态及其用法。只要你多看文章，多查词典，每天读上三四个小时英语（我有 10 年时间几乎每天花 16 个小时学英语），自然就会熟悉副词的形态及其用法。

第一节 副词的功能

1. 修饰动词：

修饰动词（包括动词转化的不定式、动名词、分词），此时副词通常置于动词之后：

例: He studies hard. (动词)

vt. adv.

（他很用功。）

I love you very much. (动词)

vt. adv.

（我非常爱你。）

You have to study diligently. (不定式)

adv.

（你必须努力用功。）

Rising early is good for your health. (动名词)

adv.

（早起有益你的健康。）

比较:

He speaks English good. (×，形容词不可用以修饰动词)

vt. adj.

→ He speaks English well. (√)

vt. adv.

（他英语说得很好。）

2. 修饰形容词：

此时副词通常置于该形容词之前：

例: He is very kind.

adv. adj.

（他心地善良。）

It is extremely dangerous to swim alone.

adv. adj.

（单独游泳极为危险。）

比较:

This is probable true. (×，形容词不得修饰形容词)

adj. adj.

→ This is probably true. (√)

adv. adj.

（这很可能是真的。）

3. 修饰副词：

此时副词通常置于该副词之前：

例: He studies very diligently.

adv. adv.

（他非常努力用功。）

He does things too carefully.

adv. adv.

（他做事过于谨慎。）

4. 修饰全句：

此时副词通常置于句首：

例: Fortunately, he did not die.

adv. 全句

（所幸他没死。）

Evidently, this answer is right.

adv.　　　　全句

（这答案显然是对的。）

注意

修饰全句的副词一定是置于句首，若置于句尾，则会修饰句中的动词，而造成语意的偏差。

例: Happily, he did not die.

adv.　　　　全句

（令人高兴地是，他没死。）

He did not die happily.

vi.　adv.

（他没有快乐地过世。—— 他死时不快乐。）

同理：He drove (his car) fast.
vi. & vt. adv.
（他车开得很快。）

fast 乃表示开车的速度很快，故 fast 应置于 drove（his car）之后。

2) **如果修饰动词的副词表示肯定、否定或频率的意味，则此类副词多置于动词之前。**

有肯定意味的副词：
surely（确定地）、certainly（确定地）、absolutely（绝对地）、probably（可能）、really（真正地）。

有否定意味的副词或频率副词：
never（从不）、seldom（很少）、hardly ever（几乎不曾）、always（总是）、often（常常）。

例: They certainly hope to win the game.
adv. vt.
（他们当然希望赢得比赛。）

I really like him.
adv. vt.
（我真的喜欢他。）

They always cheat on exams.
adv. vi.
（他们考试总是作弊。）

He is trustworthy because he never lies.
adv. vi.
（他值得信赖，因为他从不说谎。）

同学们看到上面的解释大概仍然不能完全了解赖老师想要表达的意思。没关系，赖老师换下列方式来讲解。我们可用中英语句型作比较：

中文：他跑得快。
英语：He ran fast. (✓，fast 为状态副词)
vi. adv.
He fast ran. (✕)

中文：他真的爱你。
英语：He really loves you. (✓，really 为肯定意味的副词)
adv. vt.
He loves you really. (✕)

中文：他常常上学迟到。
英语：He often comes to school late.
adv.　vi.　adv.
(√，often 为频率副词，late 则为状态副词)

由此可知，中英语有很多结构是互通的。但这种借中英语比较来了解英语中副词的位置，并不一定很准，同学们唯有通过博览文章才能学得习惯的用法，切记，切记！

2. 简化结构中副词位置的变化：

a. be 动词

简化前：He is really nice.
（他人真好。）
简化后：He is really. (×)
He really is. (√)

简化前：They are always eager to learn English.
（他们总是迫切想学英语。）
简化后：They are always. (×)
They always are. (√)

b. 助动词

简化前：He can hardly do it.
（他几乎做不了此事。）
简化后：He can hardly. (×)
He hardly can. (√)

简化前：He has never done it before.
（他从未做过此事。）
简化后：He has never. (×)
He never has. (√)

3. 状态副词在被动语态中的位置：

表示状态的副词在被动语态中，要置于过去分词前。

主动语态：He did the job well.
vt.　adv.
（他把工作做得很好。）

被动语态：The job was well done. (√)
adv.　p.p.
The job was done well. (劣)

主动语态：They decorated the room beautifully.
vt. adv.
（他们把房间装饰得很美。beautifully 修饰 decorated。）

被动语态：The room was beautifully decorated. (✓)
adv. p.p.
The room was decorated beautifully. (劣)

4. 否定副词的位置：

否定副词 never（从不）、seldom（很少）、hardly ever（几乎不曾 = scarcely ever）、rarely（很少）修饰动词时，可直接置于该动词之前，无须另加助动词 do、does 或 did。但 not 不可直接置于动词之前，须另加 do、does 或 did，且之后的动词一律改为原形。

例：He never cheats. (✓)
vi.
（他从不骗人。）

They seldom do what the teacher has told them to do.
vt.
（他们很少去做老师要他们做的事。）

He hardly ever remained quiet.
vi.
（他几乎从未安静过。）

但：He not cheats. (×)
vi.
→ He does not cheat. (✓)
原形 vi.
（他不会骗人。）

They not enjoy singing. (×)
vt.
→ They do not enjoy singing. (✓)
原形 vt.
（他们不喜欢唱歌。）

5. can 与 not 连用习惯上写成 cannot：

例：He can not meet the requirements. (劣)
→ He cannot meet the requirements. (✓)
（他达不到要求。）

6. 时间副词的位置：

时间副词，如 yesterday、today、tomorrow、this year、at five（5 点钟）、in 2000，可置于句首或句尾。习惯的用法为：句子短时，时间副词置于句尾，句子长时，则置于句首。

长句：Yesterday I saw him chatting very pleasantly with a blonde girl in the park.

（昨天我在公园里看到他和一位金发女郎聊得很开心。）

短句：I saw him in the park yesterday.

（昨天我在公园里看到他。）

长句：In 1914, war broke out in the small town close to the border.

（1914 年，战争在这座邻近边境的小城爆发。）

短句：War broke out in 1914.

（战争爆发于 1914 年。）

7. 地点副词的位置：

地点副词，如 here、there、home、downtown、upstairs、downstairs，以及表场所的介副词，如 in、out、up、down 等，均置于动词之后。

例: He came | here. / home. / in. / up.

（他来这里/回家/进来/上来。）

注意

介副词与介词的分别如下：

a. in、out、up、down 之后有宾语时，就称为介词。

例: He sat in the corner.
介 o.

（他坐在角落里。）

He looked out (of) the window.
介 o.

（他望向窗外。）

b. in、out、up、down 之后若无宾语，则为介词变成的副词，简称介副词，视为地点副词。

例: He came in.
介副词

（他进来。）

例: On seeing her, tears came into his eyes. (×)

物

理由:
tears 为眼泪，不能做出 seeing her 的动作。本句译成：
眼泪看见她后，就涌入他的眼眶中。
（他的眼泪怎会看见人？可见此句不合逻辑。）

例: In doing the work, he must be careful. (✓)

人

（做这工作时，他必须小心谨慎。）

理由:
he 为人，故可做出 doing the work 所表示的动作。

例: In doing the work, care must be taken. (×)

抽象名词

理由:
care 为抽象名词，表“谨慎”，显然“谨慎”不能自己去做工作，故本句犯了不连接修饰的错误。

2) 不定式短语当副词用：
不定式短语当副词用，除可修饰动词外，亦可置于形容词或副词之后，修饰该形容词或副词。

例: You will soon come to realize that you are mistaken.

vi.

（你很快便会了解自己错了。）

She went to Italy | in order | to study music.
vi. | so as |

（她去意大利学音乐。）

I am sorry to have kept you waiting.
adj.

（我很抱歉让你久等了。）

He is rich enough to buy a car.
adj. adv.

（他有足够的钱可以买车。）

注意

表示“目的”的不定式短语置于句首时，亦同时有副词及形容词的功能。作副词用时，不定式短语修饰整个主句；作形容词用时，则修饰主句中的主语，而该主语亦要有行使不定式短语中动词所表动作的能力，故该主语亦通常为人或动物，否则易造成不连接修饰的错误结构。

例: To achieve the goal, you must work hard.
副词短语 → 主句

To achieve the goal, you must work hard.
形容词短语 → 人

（要达成目标，你就必须努力。）

To achieve the goal, hard work is necessary. (×)
抽象名词

理由:

hard work（努力）为抽象名词，不可能自行 achieve the goal，故形成错误的不连接修饰。

但有些不定式短语已成了固定的独立副词短语，称为独立不定式短语，置于句首时，只作副词用，修饰整个主句。此时就不必顾虑主句的主语。

例: To do him justice, he is qualified for the position.
副词短语 → 主句

（替他说句公道话，他有资格担任此职。）

To be frank with you, the trip wasn't interesting.
副词短语 → 主句

（老实跟你说，这次旅行并不好玩。）

（今天有点冷。）

He did the job somewhat carelessly.

adv. → adv.

= He did the job | a little / a bit | carelessly.

（他这件事做得有些粗心。）

b. somehow　　不知怎的（= for some unknown reason）；
设法（= by some means）

1) 表示“不知怎的”时，作独立副词，通常置于句首，修饰全句。

例: He is nice; but somehow I don't like him.

adv. → I don't like him.

（他人不错，但不知怎的，我就是不喜欢他。）

2) 表示“设法”时，作一般副词，修饰句中动词，通常置于句尾。

例: We must find the money somehow.

adv. ← somehow

（我们必须设法找到那笔钱。）

c. anyhow　　况且，而且（= besides / in addition）；
不管如何（= anyway / at any rate）

例: I don't have time to go to the movies; they're too expensive anyhow.

（我没有时间去看电影，况且电影也太贵了。）

> **注意**
>
> 表“不管如何”时，anyhow 为独立副词，通常置于句首，之后有逗号，修饰逗号之后整个主句。
>
> 例: | Anyhow, / Anyway, / At any rate, | we can try.
>
> （不管怎样，我们可以试试看。）

10. enough：

enough 可作形容词，表示“足够/充分的”、“足以”。enough 不论作形容词或副词，其后通常接不定式短语（即“to + 原形动词”）或“for + 名词”。

a. 形容词：

此时 enough 表“足够/充分的”，修饰名词，通常置于该名词前，亦可置于其后。

例: He has enough money (adj. n.) to buy / for a fancy car. (常用)

= He has money enough to buy / for a fancy car. (罕)

（他有足够的钱买一辆拉风的车。）

b. 副词：

此时 enough 表“足以”，修饰形容词或副词，应置于该副词或形容词之后，不可置于其前。

例: He is enough good for the position. (×)

→ He is good enough (adj. adv.) for / to fill the position. (√)

（他条件好，足以担任此职位。）

He ran fast enough (adv. adv.) to catch the train.

（他跑得够快而赶上了火车。）

11. likely、probably、possibly **可能地**

以可能性之高低而言，likely 和 probably 表示“很可能”，而 possibly 则表示“有可能但不确定”。

例: He will (very / most) likely come.

（很有可能他会来。）

* likely 作副词时，之前可用 very 或 most 加以修饰。

She will probably leave.

（她很可能将要离开。）

They will possibly help him.

（他们说不定会帮他。）

但 likely 亦可作形容词，其用法如下：

He is likely to come.

= It is likely that he will come.

（他很可能会来。）

但:

He is probable to come. (×，probable 不能修饰人)

He is possible to come. (×，理由同上)

改正:

It is probable that he will come. (√)
（他很可能会来。）

It is possible that he will come. (√)
（他说不定会来。）

12. Short Response（简应句）:

你是……，我也是/你不是……，我也不是。

a. 肯定句用 so（使用时，采倒装结构）或 too。此处 so 是副词，表示“同样地”，并非连词，故之前应有连词 and 连接两句。

1) be 动词:

主语与 be 动词倒装。

例: He is nice, | and so is she. / and she is, too. |

（他人很好，她也很好。）

He was going home, | and so was she. / and she was, too. |

（他即将回家，她也是。）

2) 助动词:

主语与助动词倒装。

例: He will come, | and so will she. / and she will, too. |

（他要来，她也要来。）

He has gone, | and so has she. / and she has, too. |

（他走了，她也走了。）

3) 一般动词:

主语与 do、does、did 倒装。

例: He came, | and so did she. / and she did, too. |

（他来了，她也来了。）

例: They walked hand in hand down the road.
（他们手牵手沿着那条路走下去。）

They came in one after another.
（他们陆续地走进来。）

14. not 要置于不定式短语、分词、动名词之前:

例: Since I have a lot of work to do, I decided not to go on a trip. (√)
（由于有很多事要办，我决定不去旅行。）

He pretended to not know me. (×)

→ He pretended not to know me. (√)
（他假装不认识我。）

Having not finished the work, I decided to stay. (×)

→ Not having finished the work, I decided to stay. (√)
（工作没完成，我决定留下来。）

He was disappointed at not having finished the work. (√)
（他很失望没把工作完成。）

15. 助动词 + 副词 + 本动词:

例: I can always count on you for advice.
（我总是可以指望你给我忠告。）

I never have seen him before. (劣)

→ I have never seen him before. (√)
（我以前从没见过他。）

16. 副词修饰被动语态时，通常置于过去分词之前:

例: His speech was well presented.
（他演说得很好。）

That case was finally settled.
（那件事终于解决了。）

That project had been checked very carefully before it was presented to the boss. (可)

= That project had been very carefully checked before it was presented to the boss. (佳)
（那份策划书在交给老板之前已很仔细地检查过。）

17. more than 与倍数的关系:

more than 应置于倍数之前。造句法则如下：

a. 先造一个含有“倍数词 + as...as...”的句子：

例: He has three times as much money as you do.
（他的钱是你的三倍。）

b. 再于“倍数词 + as...as...”的结构前置入 more than，即告完成。

例: He has three times more than as much money as you do. (×)
→ He has more than three times as much money as you do. (✓)
（他的钱超过你的三倍。）

c. more than 亦可置于动词 double（增加一倍）之前。

例: Our income has more than doubled in one year.
（一年之内我们的收入增加了一倍多。）

18. more than 与 over 的关系：

over 作介词表“超过”时，可用 more than 代替。

例: He has stayed here over a year.
= He has stayed here more than a year.
（他已待在此地一年多。）

He has stayed here more than over a year. (×)
He has stayed here much over a year. (×，much 应删除)
Over five students are here.
= More than five students are here.
（这里的学生超过 5 人。）

19. 避免双重比较：

即 more richer、more better 等等。

例: She is more beautiful than Mary. (✓)
（她比玛丽还美。）

She is better than Mary. (✓)
（她比玛丽好。）

She is more better than Mary. (×，因 better 已经是比较级，不可再被比较级副词 more 修饰)
→ She is much better than Mary. (✓)
（她比玛丽好很多。）

People in Japan lead a more richer life than those in many other countries. (×)

→ People in Japan lead a much richer life than those in many other countries. (✓)

（日本的百姓比很多其他国家人民的生活富裕得多。）

20. 避免双重否定：

例: He hasn't never been to Japan before. (×)

→ He has never been to Japan before. (✓)

= He hasn't ever been to Japan before.

（他从来没去过日本。）

* not ever = never

You'll have to hurry up; we have hardly no time left. (×)

→ You'll have to hurry up; we have hardly any time left. (✓)

（你必须快点，我们快没时间了。）

> **注意**
>
> scarcely = hardly = almost not，为否定副词，不可再与 no 或 not 连用，但可与 any 连用；scarely any = hardly any = almost not any。
>
> 例: He cannot scarcely do this work. (×)
>
> → He can scarcely do this work. (✓)
>
> （他几乎不会做这工作。）
>
> He has hardly no money. (×)
>
> → He has hardly any money. (✓)
>
> （他几乎没有钱。）

21. 关系副词 when、why、how、where：

例: This is the time when we should set out.

(= at which)

（这就是我们该出发的时候。）

This is the reason why he was late.

(= for which)

（这就是他为何迟到的理由。）

He was high praised. (×)
→ He was highly praised. (✓)
（他大大地受到赞扬。）

We spoke high of him. (×)
→ We spoke highly of him. (✓)
（我们赞扬他。）

We think high of him. (×)
→ We think highly of him. (✓)
（我们很看重他。）

He dove deeply into the river. (×)
→ He dove deep into the river. (✓)
（他潜入河中深处。）

He was deep hurt. (×)
→ He was deeply hurt. (✓)
（他伤得很重。）

27. greatly 与 highly 之区别：

a. greatly 表“大量地，大大地”。

例: He was greatly surprised.
（他大大地吃了一惊。）

The number of traffic accidents has increased greatly.
（车祸次数大幅增加。）

b. highly 表“高高地”，通常与“表扬”、“奖励”、“推荐”等动词（如praise、recommend）连用。

例: We think highly of him.
（我们很看重他。）

8. When Arthur applied for a job, Professor Adams was able to recommend him ______.
   (A) very highly (B) with superb notices
   (C) greatly (D) with high regard

9. Children learn very quickly. When they learn about a new subject, they often ______.
   (A) become too interested in it (B) very much are interested in it
   (C) become very interested in it (D) are interested very much in it

10. The price of unleaded gasoline is ______ a dollar a gallon.
    (A) larger than (B) over
    (C) as great as (D) as many as

11. John is very diligent. But his pay is not ______ for his work.
    (A) enough good (B) good enough
    (C) as good enough (D) good as enough

12. You didn't hear us come in last night. That's good. We tried ______ noisy.
    (A) to be not (B) not to be
    (C) not be (D) be not

13. This old desk isn't ______ to sell, but maybe we could give it to someone.
    (A) goodly enough (B) good enough
    (C) good as enough (D) enough good

14. She overslept and was ______ late that she missed the bus.
    (A) so (B) too (C) much (D) very

15. Eric nearly always wins the science award. That's because his projects are ______.
    (A) extremely presented well (B) well presented extremely
    (C) presented well extremely (D) extremely well presented

16. Betty got married last week. ______ that she would get married so young.
    (A) I never dream (B) Never do I have dreamed
    (C) Do I never dream (D) I never dreamed

17. My brother never does his homework in the morning. ______.
    (A) So does John (B) John is too
    (C) John doesn't too (D) Nor does John

18. Take an umbrella when you go to Seattle, for it rains ______ there.
    (A) frequently (B) as frequent
    (C) most of times (D) much time

19. I walked 8 miles today. I never guessed that I could walk ______ far.
    (A) that (B) this (C) such (D) as

20. Prices for bikes at that store can run ______ $250.
    (A) as high as (B) so high to
    (C) as high to (D) so high as

II. 请选出错误的画线部分：

21. Many of the observations made by (A) Leonardo a little greater (B) than 400 years ago about the (C) movement of birds' wings have been verified (D) by modern photos.

22. The state legislature has approved (A) the construction of a completely (B) self-contained paper-recycling plant that will produce (C) hardly no (D) harmful waste materials.

23. Of all the Christmas toys the boy saw (A) in (B) the window, the thing he wanted (C) more (D) was a new bicycle.

24. Rain clouds and smoke caused by pollution look so much (A) alike that one cannot (B) hardly tell the difference (C) between the two of them (D).

25. The large ship sailed very good in any weather, never requiring more than
(A) (B) (C) (D)
one man at the wheel.

26. A carefully trained observer can discover details very easy although others
(A) (B) (C)
never see them.
(D)

27. She spoke so indistinct that we did not know whether we were to precede or
(A) (B) (C) (D)
follow the procession.

28. A Cezanne painting was recently sold at an auction for much over the
(A)(B) (C)
initially announced price.
(D)

29. Interest in automatic data processing has grown rapid since the first large
(A) (B) (C) (D)
calculators were introduced in 1950.

30. Today divorce is not longer regarded as a disgrace nor a tragedy, not even a
(A) (B) (C) (D)
failure.

标准答案

1. (C)	2. (D)	3. (B)	4. (D)	5. (B)	6. (B)	7. (D)	8. (A)	9. (C)	10. (B)
11. (B)	12. (B)	13. (B)	14. (A)	15. (D)	16. (D)	17. (D)	18. (A)	19. (A)	20. (A)
21. (B)	22. (D)	23. (D)	24. (B)	25. (B)	26. (C)	27. (A)	28. (C)	29. (C)	30. (A)

You are by no means the person we need.
否定副词短语
→ By no means are you the person we need.
（你绝非我们需要的人。）

I was not aware of it until he came.
状语从句
→ Not until he came was I aware of it.
否定状语从句
（直到他来，我才发觉这件事。）

He is happy only when Mary is with him.
否定状语从句
→ Only when Mary is with him is he happy.
（只有玛丽和他在一起时，他才快乐。）

b. 助动词：
主语之后有助动词时，助动词与主语要倒装。

例: He can hardly move.
否定副词
→ Hardly can he move.
（他几乎不能动。）

He has never done it before.
否定副词
→ Never has he done it before.
（他从来没做过这件事。）

He can do it under no circumstances. (实际不如此使用)
否定副词短语
→ Under no circumstances can he do it. (实际如此使用)
（他绝不可能做此事。）

He will not leave until Mary comes back.
状语从句
→ Not until Mary comes back will he leave.
否定状语从句
（直到玛丽回来，他才会离开。）

注意

scarcely hardly	+ any + 名词	几乎没有……

= almost not + any + 名词

= almost no + 名词

此时若作主语，置于句首，不可采用倒装结构。

例: Scarcely did any student pass the exam. (×)

→ Scarcely any student passed the exam. (√)

= Almost no student passed the exam. (√)

（几乎没有一个学生考及格。）

Hardly did any student know the answer. (×)

→ Hardly any student knew the answer. (√)

= Almost no student knew the answer. (√)

（几乎没有一个学生知道这个答案。）

但句中有"scarcely / hardly + a + 单数名词"作及物动词的宾语时，可将"scarcely / hardly + a + 单数名词"置于句首，仍采用倒装句。

例: He hardly spoke a word.

→ Hardly a word did he speak. (√)

（他几乎一句话也没说。）

7. nowhere（= in no place） **在任何地方都不**

此亦为否定副词，置于句首要采用倒装句。

例: Nowhere I could find such a man. (×)

→ Nowhere could I find such a man. (√)

（这种人我在任何地方都找不到。）

8. 表示"一……就……"的句型：

试译下列句子：

她一见到我就昏倒了。

____

本句有下列三种译法：

a. 同时态的状语从句：

例: As soon as she saw me, she passed out.

= Once she saw me, she passed out.

= | The instant / The moment | she saw me, she passed out.

有的词典亦列出下列的用法：

| Immediately / Instantly / Directly | she saw me, she passed out.

此时 immediately、instantly、directly 视为副词连词，等于 as soon as。但这种用法已不常见于报章杂志中，故同学们写作时，不宜使用。

b. On / Upon + N / V-ing, S + V

| Upon / On | seeing me, she passed out.

注意

upon 或 on 之后加名词或动名词时，亦表示“一……就……”之意，系由 as soon as 引导的状语从句变化而成。使用时要注意的是：as soon as 引导的状语从句中，主语若与主句的主语相同时，upon 或 on 之后加动名词；主语不同时，则状语从句中的主语要变成所有格，置于 upon 或 on 之后，再接动名词或名词。

同主语：

例: As soon as I finished the job, I went home.

→ | Upon / On | finishing the job, I went home.

（我一做完工作就回家。）

不同主语：

例: As soon as he arrived, I left.

→ | Upon / On | his arriving, I left.

或: | Upon / On | his arrival, I left.

（他一到我就走了。）

c. 否定倒装的状语从句：

1) 此类句型一共有三种：

a) no sooner...than...

（没有比……早多少）

b) hardly / scarcely...when...

（当……时，几乎没……）

c) hardly / scarcely...before...
（在……之前，几乎没……）
以上实际均译为“一……就……”。

2) 造句法：

中　　文：她一见到我就昏倒了。

第 一 步：先造一个过去完成时的句子表示先发生的动作：
She had seen me.

第 二 步：再造一个一般过去时的句子，表示后发生的动作：
She passed out.

第 三 步：两句放在一起：
She had seen me, she passed out.

第 四 步：加入 no sooner...than... 等连词：
She had no sooner seen me than she passed out.

字面翻译：她先见到我，没有比她后来昏倒早多少。
实际翻译：她一见到我就昏倒了。

She had hardly seen me when she passed out.
字面翻译：当她昏倒时，几乎没看到我。
实际翻译：她一见到我就昏倒了。

She had scarcely seen me before she passed out.
字面翻译：在她昏倒之前，几乎没看到我。
实际翻译：她一见到我就昏倒了。

注意
hardly 与 scarcely 均等于 almost not，故之后的 when 与 before 可以互换。只是现在的英语多采用“hardly / scarcely...when”，而很少有人采用“hardly / scarcely...before”。

3) 由于 no sooner、hardly、scarcely 均为否定副词，故置于句首时，过去完成时助动词 had 应与主语倒装。
No sooner had she seen me than she passed out.
Hardly had she seen me when she passed out.
Scarcely had she seen me when she passed out.

至此，我们应当对“一……就……”的句型完全了解。赖老师希望同学们能多加使用，练就更好的写作能力。

→ He stood in front of the house. (佳)
（他站在房子前面。）

He was locked in there.
代词 地点副词

→ There was locked in he. (×)
→ There he was locked in. (劣)
（他被锁在那里面。）

He was locked behind the door.
地点副词短语

→ Behind the door was locked he. (×)
→ Behind the door he was locked. (劣)
地点副词短语

→ He was locked behind the door. (佳)
（他被锁在门后。）

He was singing there.
代词 地点副词

→ Singing there was he. (×)
→ There he was singing. (√)
（他在那里唱歌。）

He was singing in the backyard.
地点副词短语

→ Singing in the backyard was he. (×)
→ He was singing in the backyard. (√)
（他在后院里唱歌。）

3. 介副词的倒装：

介副词亦视为地点副词，置于句首时，亦采用完全相同的倒装句。所谓介副词，就是由表示场所的介词（如 in、out、down、up、off 等）变成的副词。这些词之后有宾语时就称介词，若无宾语时就是介副词（由介词变成的副词）。

a. 介词

例: John walked in (或 into) the room.
介 宾语

（约翰走进房间。）

The boy looked out the window.
介 宾语

（这男孩向窗外看。）

He came down the stairs.
介　　宾语
（他走下楼。）
He climbed up the mountain.
介　　宾语
（他爬上山。）
He fell off the roof.
介　宾语
（他从屋顶上摔下来。）

b. 介副词

例: He walked in.
介副词
（他走进去。）
He looked out.
介副词
（他往外看。）
He came down.
介副词
（他走下来。）
He climbed up.
介副词
（他爬上去。）

c. 倒装方式

例: A boy walked in.
vi.
→ In walked a boy.
（一个男孩走了进来。）
The car dashed off.
vi.
→ Off dashed the car.
（这辆车子飞驰而去。）
John came down.
vi.

→ Down came John.
（约翰走了下来。）

注意

a. 主语为代词时，不得采用倒装结构。

例: In walked he. (×)

→ In he walked. (✓)
代词
（他走进来。）

Off went they. (×)

→ Off they went. (✓)
代词
（他们走了。）

b. away 视为地点副词，用法相同。

例: John went away.

→ Away went John.
（约翰走了。）

Away went he. (×)

→ Away he went. (✓)
代词
（他走了。）

c. here 亦为地点副词，用法亦相同。

例: Mary comes here.

→ Here comes Mary.
（玛丽来了。）

Here comes she. (×)

→ Here she comes. (✓)
代词
（她来了。）

4. there 与地点副词：

地点副词短语在句首时，前面可置 there 或其他相关副词，用以强调该地点副词短语。there 可置于地点副词短语之前或之后。但其他相关副词只能置于地点副词短语之前。

a. there：

例: On top of the hill lies a beautiful villa.
地点副词短语

= There on top of the hill lies a beautiful villa.
地点副词短语

= On top of the hill there lies a beautiful villa.
地点副词短语

（山丘顶上有栋漂亮的别墅。）

On the desk is a book.
地点副词短语

= There on the desk is a book.

= On the desk there is a book.

= There is a book on the desk.

（桌上有本书。）

b. 相关副词：

例: Deep in the mountains lies a small village.
相关副词　地点副词短语

（深山里有个小村落。）

Not far (away) from here is a post office.
相关副词　地点副词短语

（离这儿不远有家邮局。）

5. 倒装句的好处：

倒装句的主语在句尾，之后可接定语从句、分词短语或介词短语，用以修饰主语，因此可以扩大主语的内容，并可避免主语在句首时，主语与动词间修饰语过多的毛病。

例: 未倒装时:

A man who held a knife in one hand,
主语　定语从句

looking as if he wanted to kill somebody, stood there. (劣)
分词短语　vi.　地点副词

倒装之后:

→ There stood a man who held a knife in one hand, looking as if he wanted to
vi　主语

kill somebody. (佳)
（有个持刀的人站在那儿，看起来像要杀人的样子。）

A boy with a dog (which) he found the other day sat in the corner. (劣)
主语　介词短语　　　定语从句　　　vi. 地点副词短语

→ In the corner sat a boy with a dog (which) he found the other day. (佳)
vi. 主语
（角落里坐着个男孩和他前些天捡到的狗。）

6. here 与 there 的习惯用语：

注意下列用 here 或 there 置于句首的句子，主语为代词，因此不倒装。

a. Here we are.　　（到了。）

解说：

某甲要去见某女生，但胆小如鼠，于是便请某乙陪他一块去。两人乘了一部出租车，到了该女生家门口时，某甲、某乙以及出租车司机都可说这句话："Here we are."

b. Here you are.（或 Here you go.）　　（拿去吧。）

解说：

某甲到麦当劳买汉堡，服务小姐叫他稍候片刻。不久，服务小姐就把汉堡递给某甲，同时说了一句：

"Here you go."

给任何人所要的东西时，均可使用这句话。

c. There you go again.　　（你又来这一套了。）

解说：

某甲见到女生会流口水。某乙对某甲的行为很了解。某日，某甲与某乙一块儿出游。一位漂亮的女生擦肩而过，某甲就口水直流，某乙边用脸盆接某甲的口水，边骂道："There you go again."。

看完这一段赖老师瞎编的故事，你一定知道如何使用此用语了吧！

d. There you are.（或 There it is.）　　（在那里。）

解说：

某甲要到叔叔家去，由于是第一次拜访，在社区里找了老半天，仍然不得其门而入，幸好赖老师刚好路过，见状即带路。指着不远处一扇门说道："There you are." 或 "There it is."，某甲连声道谢后，就飞奔而去。

第五节 as 取代 though 的倒装法

1. as 取代 though 的句型：

a. though + 主语 + be 动词 + 形容词

形容词可移至句首，再以 as 取代 though。

例：Though / Although | he is nice, I dislike him.
S be adj.

→ Nice as he is, I dislike him.

= As nice as he is, I dislike him.

= Nice though he is, I dislike him.

（虽然他很好，我还是不喜欢他。）

但不可写成：

Nice although he is, I dislike him. (×)

* 上列第四个例句句首的“As nice as he is”中，第一个 As 是副词，不具意义，第二个 as 是连词，译成“虽然”。

b. though + 主语 + be 动词 + 名词

名词可移至句首，再以 as 取代 though。但名词若为单数可数名词，移至句首时，原有的不定冠词 a 或 an 一定要省略。

例：Though / Although | he is a nice boy, I dislike him.
S be n.

→ A nice boy as / though he is, I dislike him. (×)

→ Nice boy as / though he is, I dislike him. (√)

（虽然他是个好孩子，我还是不喜欢他。）

Though / Although | they are nice boys, I dislike them.
S be n.

→ Nice boys as / though they are, I dislike them.

（虽然他们是好孩子，我还是不喜欢他们。）

c. though 引导的状语从句中有副词时，可将副词移至句首，此时 though 亦可用 as 取代。

例：Though he studied hard, he failed to pass the exam.
adv.

→ Hard as / though he studied, he failed to pass the exam.

= As hard as he studied, he failed to pass the exam.

（虽然他努力读书，还是未能通过考试。）

Though she sings well, she can't dance.
　　　　　　　　　adv.

→ Well as / though she sings, she can't dance.

= As well as she sings, she can't dance.

（她虽然歌唱得好，却不会跳舞。）

d. though 引导的状语从句若无副词时，可在句首添入副词 much（很），再接 as 或 though 即可。

例: Though he loves me, I dislike him.
　　　　　无副词

→ Much as / though he loves me, I dislike him.

= As much as he loves me, I dislike him.

（他虽然很爱我，我就是不喜欢他。）

Though he wanted to see her, he didn't have the courage.
　　　　　　无副词

→ Much as / though he wanted to see her, he didn't have the courage.

= As much as he wanted to see her, he didn't have the courage.

（他虽然很想见她，却没有勇气。）

e. though 引导的状语从句有助动词 may 时，其后原形动词可置于句首，再接 as 或 though 即可。

例: Though you may try, you still can't make him change his mind.

= Try as you may, you still can't make him change his mind.

（尽管你怎么尝试，仍无法令他改变心意。）

2. as 表"因为"的用法：

as 若置于句首，则表示"因为"之意，是副词连词，等于 because。

例: As he is nice, I like him.

= Because he is nice, I like him.

（因为他人好，所以我喜欢他。）

9. An order was given, and ______.
(A) away they dashed
(B) away dashed they
(C) dashed they away
(D) away dashed them

10. Only after Norman acquired considerable facility in speaking _____.
(A) did he learn to read and write
(B) finally comes reading and writing
(C) then he learned reading and writing
(D) he learned to read and write

11. Hardly had she seen her husband ______ she ran to him.
(A) when
(B) than
(C) as
(D) that

12. Not for a moment ______ the truth of your story.
(A) he has doubted
(B) he doubts
(C) did he doubt
(D) he did doubt

13. ______ succeed in doing anything.
(A) Only by working hard we can
(B) By only working hard we can
(C) Only by working hard can we
(D) Only we can by working hard

14. Not only ____ a promise, but he also kept it.
(A) did he made
(B) he made
(C) did he make
(D) he makes

15. Nowhere in the world ______.
(A) travelers can buy so much beauty for so little money as in Hawaii
(B) no one can buy so much beauty for so little money as Hawaii
(C) so much beauty can be bought for so little money in Hawaii
(D) can travelers buy so much beauty for so little money as in Hawaii

16. Never before in similar circumstances ______.
(A) a British Prime Minister had refused to step down
(B) did a British Prime Minister have refused to step down
(C) a British Prime Minister have refused to step down
(D) had a British Prime Minister refused to step down

17. ______ received law degrees as today.

(A) Never so many women have (B) Never have so many women

(C) The women aren't ever (D) Women who have never

18. Flying demands a much greater supply of energy ______ other forms of transportation.

(A) than do most (B) most than do

(C) than most do (D) do than most

19. On the right ______.

(A) Mr. Fleming saw the foremost lines of the students

(B) saw Mr. Fleming the foremost lines of the students

(C) were seen by Mr. Fleming the foremost lines of the students

(D) the foremost lines of the students were seen by Mr. Fleming

20. Not far from the upper ford ______.

(A) they met an old friend of theirs

(B) met they an old friend of theirs

(C) was met by them an old friend of theirs

(D) there was met an old friend of theirs by them

21. "Have you ever been to Europe before, Martha?" "______."

(A) Never I have been there before (B) Never did I been there before

(C) Never have I been there before (D) I have been never there before

22. "Is Conrad always on time, Pierre?" "______."

(A) Seldom does he comes on time (B) Seldom is he on time

(C) Seldom he is on time (D) He seldom come on time

23. "Can you understand what the old man says, Harry?"

(A) Hardly can I understand what does he say.

(B) I can hardly understand what does he say.

(C) Can I hardly understand what he says.

(D) Hardly can I understand what he says.

24. "Did you see Liza make any mistake, Harry?" "______."
(A) Rarely have I seen her make any mistake
(B) Rarely I have seen her make any mistake
(C) Rarely have seen I her make any mistake
(D) I have seen her making any mistake rarely

25. "Does Lewis come here to see you very often, Nina?" "______."
(A) Scarcely does he come here to see us
(B) Scarcely has he come here to see us
(C) He scarcely come here to see us
(D) Scarcely is he come to see us

26. One of the walls of his room was lined with cupboards and bookcases; on the other ______.
(A) hung pictures of men and places
(B) pictures of men and places hanged there
(C) he hanged many pictures of men and places
(D) was hung pictures of men and places

27. Close behind the entrenchment ______.
(A) they came upon dozens of soldiers
(B) came they upon dozens of soldiers
(C) dozens of soldiers were come upon by them
(D) they had came upon dozens of soldiers

28. On the northwest side of the island ______.
(A) have signs of the incessant influence of the wind and sea
(B) there have signs of the incessant influence of the wind and sea
(C) are signs of the incessant influence of the wind and sea
(D) is signs of the incessant influence of the wind and sea

29. With the economic boom ______.
(A) a boom in education has come along with it
(B) has came a boom in education with it
(C) has come a boom in education
(D) there has a boom in education

30. Meg opened the box. Inside ______.
    (A) a diamond ring was there
    (B) a diamond ring lies there
    (C) was a diamond ring
    (D) a diamond ring was found

标准答案

1. (C)	2. (A)	3. (B)	4. (B)	5. (B)	6. (B)	7. (C)	8. (D)	9. (A)	10. (A)
11. (A)	12. (C)	13. (C)	14. (C)	15. (D)	16. (D)	17. (B)	18. (A)	19. (A)	20. (A)
21. (C)	22. (B)	23. (D)	24. (A)	25. (A)	26. (A)	27. (A)	28. (C)	29. (C)	30. (C)

习题解说

1. 主语 + 不及物动词 + 介词短语
→ 介词短语 + 不及物动词 + 主语
2. 主语 + be + p.p. + 介词短语
→ 介词短语 + be + p.p. + 主语
3. only when（只有当……）或 only after（只有在……之后）引导的状语从句置于句首时，该主句须倒装。
4. 否定副词置于句首，该句须倒装。
   若选 (A)，则空格之后的 to 应删除。
5. 与第 1 题同理。
6. 与第 3 题同理。
7. ..., nor will she come tomorrow.
= ..., and neither will she come tomorrow.
= ..., and she will not come tomorrow, either.
8. 与第 4 题同理。
9. 地点副词置于句首时，若该主语为代词，则主语与动词不可倒装。
10. 与第 3 题同理。

11. 主语 + had hardly + p.p. + when 引导的一般过去时从句
= Hardly had + 主语 + p.p. + when 引导的一般过去时从句
一……就……
12. 否定副词短语置于句首时，该句须倒装。
13. 与上题同理。
14. 与上题同理。
15. 与上题同理。
16. 否定副词（Never）置于句首，该句须倒装。
17. 与 16 题同理。
18. ...than most other...do
= ...than do most other...
此处的 do 原应置于句尾，但因主语过长，故与之倒装。
19. 介词短语置于句首时，若该句动词为及物动词，则不可与主语倒装。
20. 本句中的主语 they 为代词，动词 met 为及物动词，故该句虽有地点副词短语置于句首亦无须倒装。
21. 否定副词（Never）置于句首，该句须倒装。
22. 与 21 题同理。
23. 与 21 题同理。
24. 与 21 题同理。
25. 与 21 题同理。
26. ...; on the other wall hung pictures of men and places.
= ...; on the other hung pictures of men and places.
本句因介词短语置于句首，动词 hung 为不及物动词，故形成倒装。原句中的 wall 因与前面重复，故予以省略。
27. 与第 9 题同理。
28. 与第 1 题同理。
29. 与第 1 题同理。
30. 地点副词置于句首时，主语必须与不及物动词倒装。

第十章　比较结构

概说

约 30 年前，赖老师在中学阶段学英语的时候，不是个很用功的学生。当时喜欢穿喇叭裤，不时将高中大盘帽的两侧往内挤压，看起来像顶希特勒式的军帽。有事没事，嘴里嚼着一片口香糖，轻哼着西洋歌曲，自认洋派得很。旁人总以为赖老师的英语好得很，但赖老师心里有数，因为在班上的英语成绩排名总是最后几名。

有一天，英语老师正巧教授比较结构的形成及用法，赖老师没专心听（因为觉得太过复杂），就被老师狠狠揍了一顿（当时是可以体罚的）。赖老师个性硬，心一横，就誓言不再听英语课了。而从此以后，赖老师的英语成绩也就变成了个位数。

现在赖老师写比较结构时，心中真有无限的感慨，30 年后的今天，比较结构对赖老师而言实在易如反掌。但赖老师毕竟走了好长的一段学习路程。为使同学们在短短几天内学得赖老师的累积经验，赖老师执笔本章时，尽量以简洁易懂的笔调撰写。只要有耐心，你一定会弄懂比较结构的。在看本章之前，请同学们先看下列的句子，即使不懂亦没关系。

比较结构要靠两种副词连词形成：than、as。
基本句型有两种：

1. 原级比较：as

例：He is as diligent as Peter.
（as = 副词；as = 副词连词）
（他和彼得一样用功。）

He doesn't study so hard as Peter.
（so = 副词；as = 副词连词）
（他没有彼得那样用功。）

2. 一般比较：than

例：He is more diligent than Peter.
（more = 副词；than = 副词连词）
（他比彼得用功。）

He doesn't study harder than Peter.
（harder = 副词；than = 副词连词）
（他没有比彼得用功。）

He works less enthusiastically than Peter works enthusiastically.
S　vi.　比副　adv.　副连　S　vi.　adv.
状语从句

但：为了避免重复，than 引导的状语从句结构中仅保留比较对象，相同的陈述部分（即动词及动词以后的词）均予以省略，而成：

He is more prudent than Peter.

He works less enthusiastically than Peter.

3. than 引导的状语从句结构变化：

than 引导的状语从句结构中，若有 be 动词，可将其保留；若有助动词（can、will、shall、have、has...）亦可保留；若有一般动词，则应以 do、does、did 代替。当然这些 be 动词、助动词或 do、does、did 均可予以省略。

a. be 动词

例: He is less responsible than you (are).
（他没有你负责任。）

b. 助动词

例: He can sing more beautifully than you (can).
（他唱得比你悦耳。）

c. 一般动词

例: He worked more carefully than you (did).
（他工作比你更仔细。）

4. 形容词及副词的比较级：

绝大多数的副词或形容词（特别是三音节以上的副词或形容词），被 more 修饰时，均保留原级形态，但双音节的副词或形容词则是不规则变化（或改变词尾，或用 more 修饰），至于单音节的形容词和副词则几乎都采用词尾变化，而甚少用 more 修饰。

例: 三音节: She is more beautiful than Mary.
（她比玛丽漂亮。）

双音节: He is more prudent than Peter.
（他比彼得小心。）

但: 双音节: He is more clever than Peter. (口语)
→ He is cleverer than Peter. (√)
（他比彼得聪明。）

单音节: He runs more fast than Peter. (×)
→ He runs faster than Peter. (√)
（他跑得比彼得快。）

他比日本人对英语更有兴趣。

不过有时候我们亦会在一般文章中见到这种错误的比较，勉强可以接受，但我们应本着严谨的语法规则避免此种语病。

2) when 从句

例: He is much thinner than (he was) when I saw him ten years ago.

状语从句

→ He is much thinner than when I saw him ten years ago.

（他比我十年前看见他时瘦多了。）

He is much thinner than I saw him ten years ago. (×，比较对象错误)

理由:

本句成了 He 与 I 在作比较，而非 He 与十年前的 he 作比较。

7. 比较结构中相同动词的化简：

比较结构中，若主句为"主语 + 及物动词 + 宾语"，而 than 从句亦为"主语 + 及物动词 + 宾语"，且两个及物动词均相同时，than 从句的动词可用 do、does、did 取代。

例: I love you more than he loves you.

相同动词

= I love you more than he does you.

（我比他爱你。）

I love you more than I love Mary.

相同动词

= I love you more than I do Mary.

（我爱你比爱玛丽多。）

千万不要造这样的句子：

I love you more than Mary.

理由:

本句可能有两个意思：

→ I love you more than Mary loves you.

（我比玛丽爱你。）

→ I love you more than I love Mary.

（我爱你比爱玛丽多。）

因此，语意模棱两可，故应改为：

I love you more than Mary does. (does 不宜省略)

（我比玛丽爱你。）

原级: He has few friends.
（他的朋友很少。）

比较级: He has fewer friends than John.
（他的朋友比约翰的少。）

最高级: He has the fewest friends of all.
（他的朋友最少。）

9. 避免错误比较:

“主语 + 介词短语”或“所有格 + 主语”极易形成对象的错误比较，应予避免。

例: The apples (主语) in this basket (介词短语) are sweeter than the table. (×)

理由:

The apples 是水果，the table 是桌子，属性不同，故形成对象的错误比较。

改正:

→ The apples (主语) in this basket (介词短语) are sweeter than those (主语) on the table (介词短语). (✓)

（这个篮子里的苹果比桌子上的那些要甜。）

His (所有格) car (主语) is better than his friend. (×)

理由:

car 为物，his friend 为人，比较对象错误。

改正:

→ His (所有格) car (主语) is better than | his friend's. / that of his friend. |

（他的车子比他朋友的好。）

注意

使用 that 或 those 作代词时，that 代替单数名词（或不可数名词），those 则代替复数名词。

例: I have found that John's interest (单数 n.) in English is greater than that of his classmate Jim.

＊上句画线的 that 等于 the interest。

理由:

fat 的比较级形态应为 fatter，无 more fat 的用法。

改正:

→ The boy is getting | fatter and fatter. / increasingly fat. |

（那个男孩越来越胖了。）

注意

increasingly 等于 more and more，之后不必再接比较级。

例: The sick man is getting | weaker and weaker. / increasingly weak. |

（那名生病的男子越来越虚弱了。）

The weather is getting | hotter and hotter. / increasingly hot. |

（天气越来越热。）

14. 修饰比较级的副词:

用来修饰比较级副词或形容词的有以下六个副词，置于被修饰的副词或形容词之前:
far、much、a lot、a great deal、still、even

例: This question is | far / much / a lot / a great deal / still / even | more difficult than that one.

（这个问题比那个要难多了/甚至更难。）

He studies much harder than anyone of them.

（他比他们之中任何一个都用功得多。）

注意

a. 上列六个副词中，以 far、much 及 a lot 最常用，亦可用以修饰 superior、inferior、senior、junior。

例: This car is | far / much / a lot | <u>superior to</u> that one.

（这辆车比那辆好太多了/甚至更好。）

注意

of the two 则使用比较级。

例: Of the two students, John is the better.

adj.

（这两个学生中，约翰比较好。）

Of the two books, I like that one better.

adv.

（这两本书中，我比较喜欢那本。）

b. 最高级形容词 + n. + 关系代词 that（不可使用 who、whom、which）+ 定语从句完成时

例: John is the most responsible man (that) I've ever known.

最高级 adj.　　定语从句完成时

（在我所认识的人中，约翰是最有责任感的一位。）

He is the best student (that) I've ever taught.

最高级 adj.　　定语从句完成时

（在我教过的学生中，他是最好的一位。）

That's the greatest idea that has ever occurred to me.

最高级 adj.　　定语从句完成时

（那是我所想到过最棒的点子。）

17. the 与最高级的关系：

最高级副词修饰动词或副词时，不一定要加定冠词 the，但最高级形容词修饰名词时，则须加 the。

a. 副词

例: Of the four students, he treats people (the) most politely.

最高级 adv.　adv.

（这四个学生中，他待人最有礼。）

b. 动词

例: Of all the people I know, I respect him (the) most.

vt.　　最高级 adv.

（我所认识的人中，我最尊敬他。）

第二节 原级比较结构

原级比较结构出现在含有“as...as...”（和……一样地……）的结构中。

1. 造句方式：

a. 先造一个含有形容词或副词的句子；

例: He is prudent.
adj.
（他很小心。）

He runs fast.
adv.
（他跑得快。）

b. 再于句中的形容词或副词之前置 as 一词；as 为副词，译成“一样地”。

例: He is as prudent.
adv. adj.
（他一样地小心。）

He runs as fast.
adv. adv.
（他跑得一样快。）

c. 再设定比较对象，并在该比较对象之前置副词连词 as 即告完成；此 as 译成“和”。

例: He is as prudent as John.
一样地 和
（他和约翰一样小心。）

He runs as fast as John.
一样地 和
（他跑得和约翰一样快。）

2. 理论基础：

上列例句中，第二个 as 为副词连词，之后应有一个与主句完全一样的结构，即 as 引导的状语从句，修饰第一个 as（此为副词，表“一样地”）。

即：He is as prudent as John is prudent.
S be adv. adj. 副连 S be adj.

（一样地） （和）状语从句

He runs as fast as John runs fast.
S vi. adv. adv. 副连 S vi. adv.

（一样地） （和）状语从句

但为了避免重复，as 从句仅保留比较对象，相同的部分（即动词及动词以后的词）均予省略，而形成：
He is as prudent as John.
He runs as fast as John.

3. as 从句的变化：

a. be 动词

例: He is as prudent as John (is).
（他和约翰一样小心。）

b. 助动词

例: He can sing as well as John (can).
（他唱得和约翰一样好。）

c. 一般动词

例: He runs as fast as John (does).
（他跑得和约翰一样快。）

4. as 从句或 than 从句亦可采用倒装结构：

这种倒装结构常出现在 as 从句或 than 从句之后有定语从句时。

例: He is as prudent as John is, who is a good friend of mine. (×，who 之前无先行词 John)

→ He is as prudent as is John, who is a good friend of mine. (✓)

（他和我的好友约翰一样谨慎。）

He is more prudent than is John, who is a good friend of mine. (✓)

（他比我的好友约翰谨慎。）

⋮　　⋮
three-fourths　四分之三
⋮　　⋮
⋮　　⋮
one-fifth　五分之一
two-fifths　五分之二
⋮　　⋮
⋮　　⋮
twice　二倍
three times　三倍
four times　四倍
⋮　　⋮
⋮　　⋮

例: I am half as old as you.
（我的年龄只有你的一半。）
I study only one-third as hard as he.
（我的用功程度仅及他的三分之一。）
She is twice my weight.
（她的体重是我的两倍。）

g. 特殊结构：

1) twice as...as...(常用)　是……的两倍
= as...again as...(少用)

例: He is twice as old as I.
= He is as old again as I.
（他的年纪是我的两倍。）
He has twice as much money as I.
= He has as much money again as I.
（他的钱是我的两倍。）

2) one and a half times as...as... (常用)
= half as...again as... (少用)　是……的一倍半

例: He is eight years old, and I am one and a half times as old as he.
（他 8 岁，我 12 岁。）

He cannot sing, just as I cannot sing.
= He cannot sing any more than I (can).
= He can no more sing than I (can).
译: 鲸鱼不是鱼，正如马不是鱼一样。

A whale is not a fish not any more than a horse is not a fish.
（同词类要省略）

整理：

A whale is not a fish any more than a horse is. (√)
= A whale is no more a fish than a horse is.
= A whale is not a fish, just as a horse is not a fish.

（鲸鱼不是鱼，正如马不是鱼一样。）

注意

a) 在 "no more...than" 或 "not...any more than" 的结构中，若 than 之后的词类不同于前面的词类时，则不可省略。

他不会唱歌，正如我不会跳舞一样。

He cannot sing, just as I cannot dance. (√)
→ He cannot sing any more than I cannot dance.

整理：

He cannot sing any more than I can dance. (√)
= He can no more sing than I can dance.

他不是学生，犹如我不是老师一样。

He is not a student, just as I am not a teacher. (√)
→ He is not a student any more than I am not a teacher.

整理：

He is not a student any more than I am a teacher. (√)
= He is no more a student than I am a teacher.

b) happy、good、clever 等形容词以及 well、hard、fast 等副词，在比较级中会形成不规则变化，而成为 happier、better、cleverer 或 better、harder、faster。故置于 no more 或 not any more 之后时，不可写成：

no more happy	not any more well
no more good	not any more hard
no more wise	not any more fast
⋮	⋮
⋮	⋮

而要写成：

→ She is not more beautiful than Mary.

= She is at best as beautiful as Mary.

（她不比玛丽美丽——顶多只是和玛丽一样美。）

e. not less...than...　没有比……更少……

= at least as...as...　至少与……一样……

例: She is not less beautiful than Mary.

= She is at least as beautiful as Mary.

（她至少和玛丽一样美。）

f. 兹整理本单元句型如下：

例: He can no more drive than I.

= He cannot drive any more than I.

= He cannot drive, just as I cannot drive.

（他不会开车，就如我一样。—— 两人都不会开车。）

He is no less handsome than I.

= He is as handsome as I.

（他和我一样英俊。）

He is not more handsome than I.

= He is at best as handsome as I.

（他不比我英俊。—— 顶多跟我一样英俊。）

He is not less handsome than I.

= He is at least as handsome as I.

（他至少跟我一样英俊。）

11. no more than... / no less than...：

no more than + 数词　最多不超过……

= not more than + 数词

no less than + 数词　至少/不少于……

以上短语均为修饰数词的副词短语，句型如下：

a. no more than + 数词 + N　最多不超过……

adv.　adj.

= at most + 数词 + N

例: It takes no more than ten minutes to get there on foot.

（从这儿走到那儿只需 10 分钟。）

EXERCISE

请选出一个正确的答案：

1. He is ______ than the two boys.
   (A) better (B) more good (C) the better (D) the best
2. He is ______ of the two boys.
   (A) better (B) more good (C) the better (D) the best
3. He is ______ boy than Tom.
   (A) better (B) a better (C) the better (D) the best
4. Your knowledge is greater than a ______.
   (A) specialist (B) specialist's (C) specialists (D) specialists'
5. My watch is more expensive than ______.
   (A) you (B) your (C) yours (D) yourself
6. Mary is ______ than her sister.
   (A) less kinder (B) kind (C) less kind (D) more kinder
7. Smith is not so ______ as you are.
   (A) strong (B) stronger (C) strongest (D) the strong
8. Jean is taller than ______ in her class.
   (A) all girls (B) all the girls (C) any other girl (D) any girl
9. New York City is larger than ______ city in the U.S.
   (A) any (B) all (C) any other (D) all the other
10. New York City is larger than ______ city in China.
    (A) any (B) all (C) any other (D) all the other
11. Helen is ______ than her sister.
    (A) more proud (B) proud (C) prouder (D) the proudest
12. Helen is ______ than vain.

(A) more proud (B) proud (C) prouder (D) the proudest

13. John seems to be ______ than wise.
(A) clever (B) cleverer (C) more clever (D) the cleverer

14. Knowledge is the most useful thing. = ______
(A) No thing is so useful as knowledge.
(B) Knowledge is more useful than most things.
(C) Nothing is more useful than knowledge.
(D) Knowledge is more useful than all things.

15. To talk too much is sometimes ______ than useful.
(A) worse (B) bad (C) more bad (D) much worse

16. I did not run so fast as he. = ______.
(A) He ran faster than I. (B) I ran most fast.
(C) He ran fastest than I. (D) He ran fast than I.

17. Mary knows electronics ______ than any of her classmates.
(A) well (B) better (C) best (D) betterly

18. Most of us work ______ in the morning than in the afternoon.
(A) efficient (B) efficiently
(C) more efficient (D) more efficiently

19. Minneapolis is now ______ of these two competing cities.
(A) the largest (B) the large (C) the larger (D) larger

20. Sound travels ______ air.
(A) faster through water than through
(B) faster than through water and
(C) through water faster and
(D) where it is faster through water than through

21. Few of the people who live on the cooperatives ______ than they were as laborers.
(A) is well off financial (B) financially well off
(C) are better off financially (D) financial better off

22. The photographs of Mars taken by satellites are ______ than those taken from the Earth.
(A) clearest (B) the clearest (C) much clearer (D) more clearer

23. Adams now maintains that it is less important to save the nation ______.
(A) had alerted them to a perilous future
(B) from alerting it to a perilous future
(C) as to alert them to a perilous future
(D) than to alert it to a perilous future

24. I think Alice's ______ than unfriendly.
(A) shy (B) shyer
(C) more shy (D) more shy rather

25. Microwave oven thermometers are ______ than other kinds of oven thermometers.
(A) more cost (B) more costly (C) more costlier (D) less cost

标准答案

1. (A) 2. (C) 3. (B) 4. (B) 5. (C) 6. (C) 7. (A) 8. (C) 9. (C) 10. (A)

11. (C) 12. (A) 13. (C) 14. (C) 15. (C) 16. (A) 17. (B) 18. (D) 19. (C) 20. (A)

21. (C) 22. (C) 23. (D) 24. (C) 25. (B)

习题解说

1. 一般的比较级用法。
2. the + 比较级 + of + 二者 二者中较……的
3. boy 为可数名词，故 better boy 之前应加 a。
4. Your knowledge is greater than a specialist's knowledge.
= Your knowledge is greater than a specialist's.
5. My watch is more expensive than your watch.
= My watch is more expensive than yours.

6. less之后必须加原级形容词。

7. as + 原级形容词 + as...　　和……一样……

not so + 原级形容词 + as...　　没有比……更……

= less + 原级形容词 + than...

John is as tall as you.

（约翰和你一样高。）

John is not so diligent as you.

= John is less diligent than you.

（约翰没有你用功。）

8. Jean 和其班级作比较时，必须将自身与班级分开，故指班上女生用 any other girl in her class。

9. New York City 本身是美国都市之一，故与美国其他都市比较时，必须用 any other city in the U.S.。

10. New York City 并非中国的都市之一，故与中国的都市比较时，不必加入 other。

11. 一般的比较结构。

12. 表本身性质的形容词作比较时，一律用“more + 原级形容词”。

more A than B　　与其说是 B，不如说是 A

= less B than A

= not so A as B

John is more lazy than stupid.

= John is less stupid than lazy.

= John is not so stupid as lazy.

（说约翰笨，不如说他懒。）

13. 与上题同理。

14. Knowledge is the most useful thing.

= Nothing is | as useful as / more useful than | knowledge.

= Knowledge is more useful than | all the other things. / any other thing. |

15. 与第 12 题同理。

16. not so + 原级副词 + as　　没有比……更……

= less + 原级副词 + than

17. 此处 better 是副词 well 的比较级，修饰 knows。

18. 空格前有动词 work（工作），故空格内应置入比较级的副词 more efficiently，以修饰 work。
19. 与第 2 题同理。
20. Sound travels faster through water than it does through air.
= Sound travels faster through water than through air.
21. well off 是形容词短语，表“境况佳的”，空格之后因有 than，故 well of 应改成比较级 better off。
22. cleverer 已是比较级，故不可再用 more 修饰，而应以 much、far、a lot 修饰。
23. ...it is less important to save...than it is to alert...
= ...it is less important to save...than to alert...
24. 与第 12 题同理。
25. costly（昂贵的）的比较级为 more costly。

A Quick Note

第十一章　代词

1. it 作形式主语：

a. 代替不定式短语

例：It is good to study.

（读书有益。）

但不定式本身可作主语，故上句可改为：

To study is good.

It is necessary to read these books.

= To read these books is (非 are) necessary.

（这些书必须念。）

> **注意**
> 上列最后一句中，books 虽为复数，然而并非主语，主语乃整个不定式短语，故动词仍用单数。

b. 代替 that 从句（名词性从句）

例：It is good that he wants to study.

= That he wants to study is good.

（他想读书，这是件好事。）

*名词性从句本身具有名词的功能，故可作主语。

He can study is good. (×)

*He can study 是句子，非名词性从句，因 He 之前无连词，不能构成名词性从句，故不能作主语。

c. 代替动名词

这种用法只有与极少数名词连用。

例：It is no use / no good reading novels all day long.

= There is no use (in) reading novels all day long.

（整天看小说是没用的。）

但两者却不能直接作不完全及物动词之宾语，必须用 it 代替。

例: I think that he is good true. (×)
宾语 补语

→ I think it true that he is good. (✓，think 译成“认为…是…”)
不完全 vt.

（我认为他人不错，这是事实。）

I think to get up early good. (×)
宾语 补语

→ I think it good to get up early. (✓)

（我认为早起很好。）

I think (that) it is true that he is good. (✓，think 译成“认为”)
完全 vt. 名词性从句作 think 的宾语

注意

以下是常用的不完全及物动词：

think	认为……是……
consider	认为……是……
deem	认为……是……
believe	相信……是……
find	发现……是……

例: I consider / think / deem / believe / find it necessary to exercise on a daily basis.

（我认为/认为/认为/相信/发现每天运动是有必要的。）

3. it 用以强调主语或宾语：

例: I love him.

→ It is I who (或 that) love him.
（爱他的是我。）

His words made me angry.

Neither of the two books is good.
（这两本书都不好。）

None of the three students is (或 are) diligent.
（三个学生中没有一个是用功的。）

Both of the two students are lazy.
（那两个学生都懒惰。）

All of the five apples are rotten.
（这五个苹果都烂掉了。）

15. one...the other...　**一个……另一个……（限定的两者）**

例: He has two sons. One is a teacher, and the other is a soldier.
（他有两个儿子。一个是老师，另一个则是军人。）

16. one...another...the other...　**一个……一个……另一个……（限定的三者）**

例: He has three sons. One is a teacher, another is a soldier, and the other is a lawyer.
（他有三个儿子。一个是老师，一个是军人，另一个则是律师。）

17. one...another...　**一个……另一个……（非限定的两者）**

例: Hobbies vary with people. One may enjoy swimming, while another may love hiking.
（喜好因人而异。某甲可能喜欢游泳，某乙则可能喜欢远足。）

18. some...others...　**一些……另一些……（非限定的两群）**

例: Hobbies vary with people. Some may enjoy swimming, while others may love hiking.
（喜好因人而异。有些人可能喜欢游泳，有些人则可能喜欢远足。）

19. some...others...still others...　**一些……一些……另一些……**

例: Hobbies vary with people. Some may enjoy swimming, others may be fond of bungee jumping, and still others may love hiking.
（喜好因人而异。有些人可能喜欢游泳，有些人可能喜欢蹦极，也有些人则喜欢远足。）

20. 明确数词...the others / the rest...　**若干……其他/其余……**

例: Only two students in my class passed the test. The others failed.
（我班上只有两个学生通过考试，其余全不及格。）

EXERCISE

Ⅰ. 请选出一个正确的答案：

1. I guess James didn't have a chance to win the election. ______ the people in the city voted for his opponent.
   (A) Almost all of (B) Most all of
   (C) Most of all (D) Almost the whole of

2. Wagner and Strauss were such good friends that they frequently exchanged gifts with ______.
   (A) each one (B) each other (C) the other (D) another

3. The beginning course in algebra was very easy, but ______ one is certainly not.
   (A) which (B) this (C) some (D) no

4. She is very forgetful and cannot recognize her grandchildren from one visit to ______.
   (A) next one (B) other one (C) the other one (D) the next

5. Even though Africa game preserves have saved many animals, there are ______ that will not be saved.
   (A) some more (B) all others (C) many more (D) much more

6. Some of our wedding vows were taken from the traditional ceremony, and some of them were written by ______.
   (A) my husband and I (B) my husband and my
   (C) my husband and me (D) my husband and mine

7. The principal responsibility of managing the dormitory rests with the students ______.
   (A) itself (B) of itself (C) themselves (D) their selves

8. John behaved so strangely today; I thought he wasn't acting like ______.
   (A) him (B) himself (C) he would (D) he does

9. I don't take John's pen because I don't like ______.
   (A) that pen of his　　(B) that his pen
   (C) his that pen　　(D) that pen of him

II. 请选出错误的画线部分:

10. As one nears the bridge, you come to a narrow rocky valley, the site of
    (A) As one nears　(B) rocky　(C) the site
    several historic battles.
    (D) historic

11. Many modern skyscrapers, though visually pleasing, they have heating and
    (A) visually pleasing　(B) they have
    cooling systems that require closed windows and consequently waste energy.
    (C) closed　(D) waste

12. Each member of the team bought themselves a new car with the money
    (A) bought　(B) themselves
    earned in the championship game.
    (C) earned　(D) in

13. The functions performed by individual members of a colony of bees
    (A) performed　(B) individual
    are determined by chemical substances transferred from a bee to another.
    (C) are determined　(D) a

14. They asked us, Henry and I, whether we thought that the statistics
    (A) I　(B) thought
    had been presented fairly and accurately.
    (C) had been presented　(D) fairly

15. He is familiar with the most of calculus equations, but he wants to study
    (A) familiar with　(B) the most of　(C) to study
    them again before the examination.
    (D) before

16. Whoever inspected this radio should have put their identification number on
    (A) Whoever　(B) this　(C) should have　(D) their
    the box.

17. Most early settlers provided for themself before sharing their surplus with
(A) (B) (C) (D)
others.

18. Computers are indispensable in data processing, but some people are afraid
(A)
that its impersonal solutions might do harm to mankind in the long run.
(B) (C) (D)

19. Maria has long had the desire to become a famous writer even though the
(A) (B)
study of it would require years of sacrifice on her part.
(C) (D)

20. Every man and woman should vote for the candidate of her choice.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

21. In order to get married in this state, one must present a medical report
(A) (B)
along with your identification.
(C) (D)

22. If we finish all of our business as planned, Helen and me will leave for New
(A) (B) (C)
York on Monday morning.
(D)

23. William the Conqueror built the Tower of London to protect himself from
(A) (B)
them he had conquered.
(C) (D)

24. When science, business, and art learn something of each others' methods and
(A) (B)
goals, the world will have come closer to cultural harmony.
(C) (D)

25. She wore clothes that were better than that of the other girls.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

26. It is often easier to select a particular tool than to use them correctly.
(A) (B) (C) (D)

27. It was her who represented her country in the United Nations and later
(A) (B) (C) (D)
became ambassador to the United States.

28. The speaker announced that there was a small fire and directed them nearest
(A) (B) (C)
the door to leave first.
(D)

29. While some of lawyers would endorse the opposite view, most would
(A) (B) (C)
probably agree that freedom of the press is not absolute.
(D)

30. The good statesman, like all sensible human beings, always learns more from
(A) (B) (C)
their opponents than from his supporters.
(D)

标准答案

1. (A) 2. (B) 3. (B) 4. (D) 5. (C) 6. (C) 7. (C) 8. (B) 9. (A) 10. (A)

11. (B) 12. (B) 13. (D) 14. (A) 15. (B) 16. (D) 17. (B) 18. (B) 19. (C) 20. (D)

21. (D) 22. (B) 23. (C) 24. (B) 25. (C) 26. (D) 27. (B) 28. (B) 29. (A) 30. (D)

习题解说

1. almost all of the... 几乎所有的……
2. each other 彼此（二者）
   one another 彼此（三者以上）
3. a. 空格前有连词 but，故空格内置入指示代词 this（这个）即可。
   b. 关系代词 which 本身可作定语从句的关系代词，其前面不可再加连词 but。
   I have a book, which is good. (✓)
   I have a book, and which is good. (×)

I have a book, and it is good. (√)

故 (A) 不可选。

4. from one visit to the next

= from one visit to another

5. animals 为可数名词，故其前不可用 much more，而要用 many more。

6. 作 by 的宾语，故用宾格 me。

7. students 为复数形式，其反身代词为 themselves。

8. himself 为 he 的反身宾格。

9. 所有格不可和指示代词（this、that、these......）并置于名词前。

his that pen (×)

→ that pen of his (√)

他的那支笔

10. As one nears 应改为 As you near 使主语一致。

11. (B) they have 应改为 have，因 have 已有主语 Many modern skyscrapers。

12. (B) themselves 应改为 himself 或 herself，因主语 Each member 是单数。

13. (D) a 应改为 one (one...another)。

14. (A) I 应改为 me，因 Henry and me 系 They asked us 之宾语同位语，故用宾格。

15. (B) the most of 应改为 most of the，或 most（作形容词用），修饰 calculus equations。

16. (D) their 应改为 his，因 whoever = any one who，恒作单数用。

17. (B) themself 应改为 themselves。

18. (B) its 应改为 their，因 computers 为复数。

19. (C) it 应改为 writing，因 it 不可能代替 a famous writer。

20. her 应改为 their 或 his or her。

21. (D) your 应改为 his（美语）或 one's（英语），因主语是 one。

<u>One</u> should love <u>one's</u> country.（较严谨）

= <u>One</u> should love <u>his</u> country.

22. (B) me 应改为 I，作主语。

23. (C) them 应改为 those，因其后有定语从句修饰，...those (whom) he had conquered。

24. (B) each others' 应改为 each other's，因 each other 恒无复数。

They like each other. (√)

They like each others. (×)

25. (C) that 应改为 those = the clothes。
26. (D) them 应改为 it，it = this tool。
27. (B) her 应改为 she，It was...who 用来强调主语 she。
28. (B) them 应改为 those，those nearest... = those who were nearest...。
29. (A) some of 应改为 some of the 或 some。
30. (D) their 应改为 his，因主语 The good statesman 是单数。

A Quick Note

第十二章　复合形容词

概说

复合形容词就是两个以上的词加连字符形成的形容词，通常置于名词之前，用以修饰该名词。一般而言，复合形容词有下列数种：

a. 数词 + 名词

例: The government has just mapped out a five-year plan to improve our secondary education.
（政府刚刚拟定一项改善中等教育的五年计划。）

b. 数词 + 名词 + 形容词

例: The ten-year-old boy is regarded as a child prodigy.
（这个 10 岁的男孩被视为神童。）

c. 名词 + 现在分词

例: The heart-breaking story made everyone cry.
（大家听到这个伤心的故事都哭了。）

d. 副词 + 现在分词

例: John is easy-going, which makes him quite popular.
（约翰很随和，使他很受大家的欢迎。）

e. 名词 + 过去分词

例: The heart-broken man committed suicide.
（那个心碎的男子自杀了。）

f. 形容词 + 名词变成的过去分词

例: Everyone likes that kind-hearted old man.
（每个人都喜欢那个好心的老伯伯。）

g. well / ill + 过去分词

例: This is a well-organized company.
（这是一家很有组织的公司。）

兹分项说明如下：

1. 数词 + 名词：

a. 数词修饰名词时，该名词一定是可数名词，数词若为 one，名词一定是单数，但数词若为 two 以上时，则名词一定是复数。

例: This program will last one year, but that program will last five years.
（这个计划会持续一年，但那个计划则会持续五年。）

b. 数词若为 zero（零）时，由于为无限大，故之后应置复数名词。

例: It's zero degree Celsius. (×)
→ It's zero degrees Celsius. (✓)
（现在气温是摄氏零度。）

c. 如何将"数词 + 名词"变成复合形容词？

1) 保留数词；
2) 在数词之后置入连字符，再接名词。不论数词是 one 或 two 以上，之后的名词恒为单数。

例: This five-years plan may take more than five years to carry out. (×)
→ This five-year plan may take more than five years to carry out. (✓)
（这项五年计划执行起来得超过五年。）

The zero-degrees temperature is unbearable. (×)
→ The zero-degree temperature is unbearable. (✓)
（零度的气温让人受不了。）

2. 数词 + 名词 + 形容词：

a. 此类结构中，"数词 + 名词"视为副词，修饰之后的形容词，数词若为 one，之后名词应为单数，数词若为 two 以上，则之后的名词应为复数。

例: John is five years old. (✓)
（约翰 5 岁了。）
上列例句中，数词 five years 是副词，修饰形容词 old。

The road is three miles long. (✓)
（这条路有 3 英里长。）

上列例句中，three miles 是副词，修饰形容词 long。

c. 试将下列定语从句改为“名词 + 现在分词”的复合形容词结构：

1) This is an animal that eats men.
2) They are people who abide by the law.

解答：

1) This is a man-eating animal.
（这是个会吃人的动物。）
2) They are law-abiding people.
（他们是守法的人。）

d. 有些复合形容词因为常用的关系，日久就省略了连接符号，成为一个词了。如 heart-breaking 早已改成 heartbreaking（伤人心的），blood-curdling 亦已改成 bloodcurdling（令人毛骨悚然的）。

4. 副词 + 现在分词：

主动语态的定语从句中的动词若为不及物动词，且有副词修饰时，该定语从句亦可化简为复合形容词，原则如下：

1) 找出定语从句中的副词，之后置入连字符；
2) 将从句中的不及物动词变成现在分词，置入连字符之后，即形成复合形容词，置于被定语从句修饰的名词之前即告完成。

例：The area which lay low was flooded.
定语从句
（这块低洼地区淹水了。）

a) 找出副词 low，之后置人连字符，即成 low-；
b) 将不及物动词 lay（lie 的过去式）变成现在分词 lying，置入连字符之后，即成 low-lying（地势低的），再将 low-lying 置于 area 之后即告完成。故上句亦可改写为：
The low-lying area was flooded.
（这块低洼地区淹水了。）

5. 名词 + 过去分词：

此类结构形成的复合形容词一律由被动语态的定语从句化简而成。

a. 被动语态的定语从句

例：I feel sorry for the boy whose heart is broken.
主语　被动语态
（我为那个心碎的男孩子感到难过。）

上列例句中，“whose heart is broken”是定语从句，主语 whose heart 之后有 is broken，是“be + 过去分词”形成的被动语态。

b. 如何将被动语态的定语从句变成复合形容词?

1) 找出作主语的名词，并将该名词一律变作单数，之后置入连字符；
2) 将被动语态的过去分词置入连字符之后，所形成的复合形容词置于被定语从句修饰的名词之前即告完成。

例: I feel sorry for the boy whose heart is broken.
主语　被动语态

1) 找出作主语的名词 heart，之后置入连字符，即成 heart-；
2) 将被动语态的过去分词 broken 置入连字符之后，即成 heart-broken（心被打碎的），再将 heart-broken 置于 boy 之前即告完成。

故上句亦可改写如下：

I feel sorry for the heart-broken boy.
（我为那个心碎的男孩感到难过。）

6. 形容词 + 名词变成的过去分词:

a. 此类结构形成的复合形容词均与身体部位的器官或组织有关。

例: Who is that big-eyed girl?
（那个大眼睛的女孩子是谁？）
上列结构中，big 是形容词，eyed 是名词 eye 变成的现在分词。

b. 如何形成“形容词 + 名词变成的过去分词”之类的复合形容词?

在定语从句中，若有表“身体部位的器官或组织”的名词，之前有形容词修饰时，可在该形容词之后置入连字符，再将该名词变成过去分词置于连字符之后即成复合形容词。

例: a girl who has big eyes → a big-eyed girl
adj.　n.　（大眼睛的女孩）

a soldier who has only one leg → a one-legged soldier
adj.　n.　（独脚的战士）

a snake that has two heads → a two-headed snake
adj.　n.　（两头蛇）

a boy who has a broken heart → a broken-hearted boy
adj.　n.

或: a boy whose heart is broken → a heart-broken boy
被动语态　（伤心的男孩）

7. well 及 ill 如何形成复合形容词：

well 及 ill 之后亦可置连字符，再接过去分词，形成复合形容词。常用的此类复合形容词如下：

well-behaved	很守规矩的
well-bred	很有教养的
well-built	体格很棒的
well-chosen	慎选的
well-done	表现很棒的；（牛排）全熟的
well-dressed	穿着体面的
well-known	很出名的
well-mannered	彬彬有礼的
well-read	书读得很多的，饱读诗书的
well-traveled	去过很多地方的，老马识途的
ill-bred	没有教养的
ill-considered	考虑不周的
ill-fated	命运不好的，不幸的
ill-gotten	用不正当手段获得的
ill-judged	判断不当的
ill-mannered	态度不好的
ill-natured	心地不好的，本性坏的
但：good-natured	本性善良的（非 well-natured）

以上形容词可置于 be 动词之后作表语；亦可置于名词前，修饰该名词。

例：I like the child because he is well-behaved.
（我喜欢这孩子，因为他很乖。）

The ill-fated young man committed suicide in the end.
（这位命苦的年轻人最后自杀了。）

EXERCISE

请选出一个正确的答案：

1. David was brought up in a ______ country.
   (A) tearing-war (B) torn-war (C) war-torn (D) war-tearing
2. I live in a ______ building.
   (A) five-story (B) five-stories (C) five-story-high (D) five-storied
3. Who is that ______ man talking to John over there?
   (A) gray-hair (B) gray-hairy (C) gray-hairs (D) gray-haired
4. The president will step down because of the scandal, ______ sources said today.
   (A) well-informing (B) well-inform
   (C) well-informed (D) well-information
5. Mary's miniskirt is indeed ______ in the picture.
   (A) eye-caught (B) eye-catching
   (C) catching-eye (D) eyes-catching

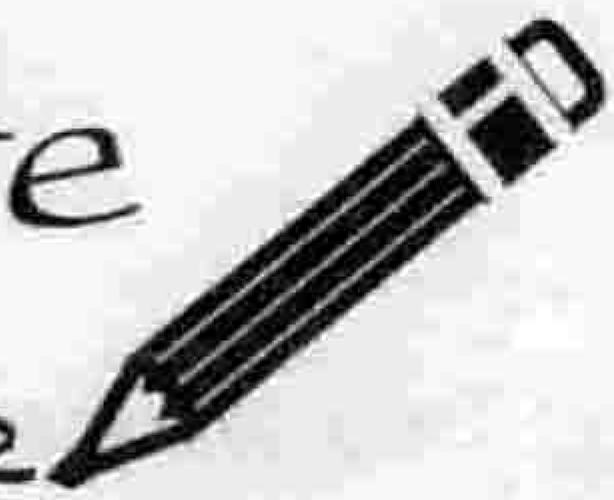
标准答案

1. (C) 2. (A) 3. (D) 4. (C) 5. (B)

习题解说

1. war-torn a. 被战争撕裂的，饱受战争摧残的
2. five-story a. 5 楼高的（数词 + 单数名词）
3. gray-haired a. 白发苍苍的（hair 为身体组织，故用过去分词）
4. well-informed sources 消息灵通人士（新闻用语）
5. eye-catching （主动）引起注意的

A Quick Note



第十三章　介词用法

第一节　at

1. at + 建筑物（邮局、车站、银行、学校等）　　在某建筑物（可能在其内或其外面）

at the post office / station / bank　　在邮局/车站/银行（之内或之外）

例: We're going to meet at the station.
（我们将在车站碰面。）

> **注意**
>
> a. 城市、国家等则与介词 in 连用。
>
> in the city / my hometown / the United States
> 在城市里/我的故乡/美国
>
> 例: There's a famous temple in my hometown.
> （我的故乡有一座有名的寺庙。）
>
> b. 若强调"在某建筑物内"则介词仍须使用 in。
>
> in the post office / station / bank　在邮局/车站/银行里
>
> 例: My husband works in this office building.
> （我先生在这栋办公大楼上班。）

2. at + 人　　对某人（尤指近距离，常与 yell、point、shout、laugh 等动词连用。此处 at 表"朝向"）

yell / shout at 人　　对某人吼叫/咆哮

laugh at 人　　嘲笑某人

point at 人　　指着某人

例: The man always shouts at his wife when he is angry.
（那个男人生气时总是对他的太太咆哮。）

Don't laugh at the poor beggar, Johnny.
（约翰尼，不要嘲笑那个可怜的乞丐。）

The teacher pointed at him and said, "I saw you cheat on the test."
（老师指着他说："我看到你考试时作弊。"）

比较:

point to...　　指着远处的……

例: He pointed to the house on the hilltop and said, "It's my house."
（他指着山顶上的房子说："那是我的家。"）

3. at 与下列名词连用，表"从事某活动"：

be at work　　上班, 做事

be at church　　做礼拜

be at school　　上学

be at rest　　休息

例: Selena is at work now; don't bother her.
（赛琳娜正在工作，不要打扰她。）

A: Where's Jack?

B: He's at church.

（A：杰克在哪里？）
（B：他去做礼拜。）

A: Is Frank at home?

B: No, he's at school.

（A：弗兰克在家吗？）
（B：不在，他在学校。）

You can go ask the manager now; he's at rest in the lobby.
（你现在可以去问经理；他正在大厅里休息。）

4. at 亦与度数/程度/价格/年龄等与数词有关的名词连用：

at the price / cost / expense of + 数词　　以……的价格

at the age of + 年龄　　在……的岁数时

at the speed of + 速度　　以……的速度

例: I bought the portable CD player at the price of $450.
（我以 450 美元的价格买了这台 CD 随身听。）

Sandy had her first child at the age of 32.
（珊蒂在 32 岁时生了第一个小孩。）

She drove at the speed of 28 miles an hour.
（她当时以时速 28 英里的速度开车。）

第二节　by

1. 表“在……之旁”，相当于 beside：

by the window　在窗边

by the door　在门边

by my side　在我旁边

例: The woman always sat by the window and stared into the distance.
（那位女士总是坐在窗边，凝视着远方。）

He came over and stood by my side.
（他走过来站在我旁边。）

2. 表“凭借”：

judge A by B　借由 B 来评鉴、判断 A

tell A by B　借由 B 知道是 A

例: Don't judge a person by his or her looks.
（不要以貌取人。）

I can tell by his action that he is a naughty boy.
（从他的行为我可以判断他是一个调皮的男孩。）

3. by 与下列表“抓”有关的动词连用，仍表“借由”：

catch / grab / grasp / hold / seize / take + 人 + by the + 身体部位或衣物的部分

抓住某人的……

例: The man seized him by the collar and told him to shut up.
（那个男人抓住他的衣领叫他闭嘴。）

注意

此句型中 by 之后只可接 the，不可接所有格。

I caught him by the hand.
（我抓住了他的手。）

不可说 I caught him by his hand. (×)

4. by 亦表“经过”之意：

pass by my house　经过我家

drive by my house　开车经过我家

walk by my house　走路经过我家

例: I passed by my house and didn't walk in.
（我经过家门而没有走进去。）

5. by 亦表“差距”之意，尤用于下列用法：

be older than + 人 + by two years　　比某人大两岁
be younger than + 人 + by two years　　比某人小两岁

例: She is older than I by five years.
（她比我大 5 岁。）

We beat the other team by two points.
（我们以两分之差赢了另一队。）

6. by 亦表“按照”：

例: They sell eggs by the dozen.
（他们论打卖鸡蛋。）

*上句中，by 之后置 the，再置度量单位名词，如 by the box（论盒）、by the yard（论码）。

It is five twenty by my watch.
（我的表现在是 5 点 20。）

7. by 亦表“取道”：

come back by way of Hong Kong　　取道香港回来
= come back via Hong Kong

例: We went to Beijing by way of Hong Kong.
（我们取道香港前往北京。）

8. by 亦表“乘坐（交通工具）”：

come back by bus / train / ship / air / bicycle / motorcycle
乘公交车/火车/船/飞机/（骑）自行车/（骑）摩托车回来

例: He goes to work by taxi every day.
（他每天乘出租车上班。）

注意

a. 以上句型中交通工具不可与冠词或所有格连用。
*不可说 by the train、by a car、by my taxi。
b. 表“步行”时则应使用“on foot”。

例: He came back on foot.
（他是走路回来的。）

9. by 亦用于被动语态，表“被……”：

be + 过去分词 + by...

例: He was killed by a car.
（他被车撞死了。）

10. by 亦可用于主动语态：

by + 动名词　　用/通过……

例: He succeeded by working hard.
（他通过努力而成功。）

The old woman makes a living by selling fruit.
（那个老太太以卖水果为生。）

11. by + 时间　　最迟不超过某时间

例: Come back by ten.

= Come back no later than ten.
（10 点以前要回来。）

take A for B　　（误）把 A 当作 B

例: The natives use some insects for food.
（那些原住民以一些昆虫为食。）

I took John for a girl because he wears long hair.
（我把约翰误当作女孩子，因为他留长发。）

6. 表“找寻”：

be hard pressed for time　时间不够用（而须寻找时间）

look for...　寻找……

例: The lady wears many hats. She is always hard pressed for time.
（那位女士扮演多重角色。她的时间总是不够用。）

7. 表“持续（一段时间）”：

例: I have learned Japanese for three years.
（我已经学了 3 年的日语了。）

I haven't seen John for a long time / for ages.
（我好长一段时间没见到约翰了。）

8. for 亦用于下列句型中：

It is + 非表人之本性或气质的形容词 + for sb to + 原形动词...

对某人来说（做）……是……的。

例: It is necessary for you to study English.
（学英语对你来说是有必要的。）

比较:
It is + 表人之本性或气质的形容词（如 kind、cruel、stupid）+ of sb to + 原形动词...
某人做某事实在很……。

例: It is very kind of you to help me.
（你能帮我真是太好了。）

9. 表“开往（某地点）（的交通工具）”：

例: The flight for Chicago will depart at two thirty.
（往芝加哥的班机将在 2 点30 分起飞。）

10. 表“以……价格”：

例: I bought the book for only $10.
（这本书我 10 元就买到了。）

第五节 in

1. 表“在……之内”，如建筑物、空间、书、文件、公司等：

in the house	在房子里
in the park	在公园里
in the magazine	在杂志里
in this company	在这间公司里

例: Your dog is in the house, not in the backyard.
（你的狗在房子里，不在后院。）

The kids are playing in the park.
（孩子们正在公园里玩。）

There's a report about this superstar in the current issue of *Time*.
（这一期的《时代》杂志中有一篇关于这位超级巨星的报导。）

Eighty percent of the workers in this company are female.
（这家公司有 80% 的员工是女性。）

2. 表“穿/戴着……”：

be dressed in...　　身穿/戴着……
= wear...

例: Who is the girl that is dressed in red?
= Who is the girl that is wearing a red dress?
（那个穿着红衣服的女孩是谁？）

比较:

put on 指“穿”的动作

例: She put on her coat before going out.
（她出门前穿上她的外套。）

3. “in + 一段时间”表“在一段时间之后”，相当于“一段时间 + later”，亦可表“在一段时间之内”，此时 in 相当于 within：

例: I'll be back in two minutes.
= I'll be back two minutes later.
（我两分钟后就会回来。）

I think I can finish the work in two minutes.

= I think I can finish the work within two minutes.
（我想我在两分钟内就可以完成这份工作。）

4. 表“以……（颜料、工具等）”：

write the letter in ink / pencil　　用墨水/铅笔写信

write the word in chalk　　用粉笔写字

注意

pencil 当不可数名词，指“铅笔的颜料”，若当可数名词，则指“铅笔”要用“with a pencil”（用一支铅笔）。chalk 原指“滑石粉”，亦是粉笔的原料，是不可数名词，表“用一支粉笔”要用“with a piece of chalk”（非 with a chalk）来表示。

write the words in ink　　用钢笔写字

= write the words with a pen

write the words in pencil　　用铅笔写字

= write the words with a pencil

write the words in chalk　　用粉笔写字

= write the words with a piece of chalk

例: She wrote a letter to me in ink.
（她用钢笔写了一封信给我。）

The professor wrote some words in chalk on the blackboard.
（教授用粉笔在黑板上写了几个字。）

5. 表“按……次序”：

in alphabetical order　　按字母顺序

keep...in order　　将……整理好/整齐

例: He put the papers in the folders in alphabetical order.
（他把文件按照字母顺序放入档案夹中。）

Keep your room in order before the guests come.
（客人来之前把你的房间整理好。）

6. 表“以……语言/声音”：

write in Chinese　　用中文写

speak in a low voice　　低声说话

talk in a bitter tone　　以尖刻的语调说话

例: It's surprising that the foreigner can write in Chinese.
（这老外会写中文，真令人惊讶。）

第六节 on

1. 表“接触在某物体的表面上”：

on the table 在桌上

on the roof 在屋顶上

例: The maid put the dishes on the dining table.
（女仆把碗盘放在餐桌上。）

There are two cats on the roof.
（屋顶上有两只猫。）

2. 与表“距离”的名词连用：

go on a trip / journey 去旅行

go on an expedition 去探险/远征

go on an excursion （尤指团体）去远足

例: My husband likes to go on a trip to Japan at this time of the year.
（我先生喜欢在每年的这个时候去日本旅行。）

Those explorers went on an expedition to the Sahara.
（那些探险家去撒哈拉沙漠探险。）

The students in the sixth grade are going on an excursion today.
（六年级的学生今天要去远足。）

3. 与表“差遣”的名词连用：

be on an errand 跑腿，办差事

be on a mission 身负使命

例: A: Where's Johnny?

B: He's out on an errand.

（A：约翰尼在哪里？）

（B：他出去办点差事。）

The soldiers were sent to the front on a mission.
（那些军人被派往前线作战。）

4. 与表“约会”的名词连用：

be on a date with sb　　跟某人约会

例: Were you on a date with the man over there last night?
（你昨晚和那边那位男士约会吗？）

5. 与表“特别饮食”的名词连用：

be on a diet　　节食

例: Cindy won't eat these cakes. She's on a diet.
（辛蒂不会吃这些蛋糕的。她正在节食。）

6. 与 run、go 等名词连用，表“持续的动作”：

be on the run　　到处流窜

be on the go　　忙碌（= be busy）

例: The three wanted men have been on the run for six months.
（那三名通缉犯已经逃亡六个月了。）

My eldest sister is always on the go.
（我大姐总是忙个不停。）

7. 与表“平地”或“大陆”的名词连用：

on campus　　在校园内

on the mainland　　在大陆

on the farm / ranch　　在农场/牧场上

例: The club held many activities on campus this week.
（该社团这星期在校园里举办了许多活动。）

Life on Hainan is different in many ways from life on the mainland.
（海南岛居民的生活和大陆的居民在很多方面不同。）

They rear cattle and sheep on the ranch.
（他们在牧场上饲养牛羊。）

比较:

off campus　　在校外

例: Students should behave themselves even off campus.
（学生即使在校外也应该守规矩。）

8. 与表"线状 / 线条"意味的名词连用：

live on that street	住在那条街上
walk on the beach	在海滩散步（海滩为线状）
on the coast	在海岸上
on the brim / edge / verge of...	在……的边缘
on the frontier	在边境

例: The Green family live on that street.
（格林家住在那条街上。）

I like to walk on the beach with my boyfriend.
（我喜欢和男友在海滩散步。）

The village is located on the coast.
（那个村子位于海岸上。）

The entrepreneur is on the verge of bankruptcy.
（那位企业家正濒临破产边缘。）

Many rare animals are on the edge of extinction.
（很多稀有动物濒临绝种。）

There are few people living on the frontier.
（边境地区很少人居住。）

9. 表"凭，靠"之意：

on foot　　步行（非 by foot）

例: Do you go to school on foot every morning?
（你每天早上都是走路上学吗？）

10. 表"根据、遵照"：

act on one's advice	按照某人的建议行事
act on one's order	遵照某人的命令行事

例: I'll act on your advice and try to achieve the goal.
（我会按照你的建议行事，试着去达成目标。）

Don't ask too much. Just act on my order.
（不要问太多。只要遵照我的命令行事就对了。）

11. 与表有关“无线电器材”之名词连用：

on / over the telephone 在打电话

on television 在电视屏幕上（非 on the television）

on / over the radio 在广播中

例: Steven is talking on the telephone.
（史蒂芬正在通电话。）

I saw your daughter perform on television last night.
（我昨晚看到你女儿在电视上表演。）

We heard the news on the radio this afternoon.
（今天下午我们在广播中听到这个消息。）

12. 与表“赞美、恭贺”的名词连用，表“为了/因为……”：

congratulate sb on（代）名词/动名词 因……而恭贺某人

例: His family congratulated him on passing the exam.
（他的家人恭喜他通过了考试。）

13. 与“日子”连用：

on Sunday 在星期天

on December 11 在 12 月 11 日

例: Emile goes to church on Sundays.
（埃米尔星期天都上教堂。）

We're going to celebrate Leon's birthday on December 11.
（我们将在 12 月 11 日庆祝利昂的生日。）

注意

in the morning / afternoon / evening 在早上/下午/傍晚

at night 在晚上

但 morning / afternoon / evening 如与日子连用时，介词用 on。

on the afternoon of August 16 在 8 月 16 日下午

on Monday morning 在星期一早上

on Saturday night 在星期六晚上

例: The famous singer got together with his fans on the afternoon of August 16.
（那位名歌手在 8 月 16 日下午和他的歌迷聚会。）

We always have a meeting on Monday morning.
（我们总是在星期一早晨开会。）

She brought forward a solution to the problem.
（她提出了一个解决这个问题的方法。）

4. 表“附加”之意：

the annex to the building	这栋大楼的附属建筑物
the amendment to the constitution	宪法修正案

例：The old man lives in the annex to the building.
（那个老人住在这栋大楼的附属建筑物里。）

The amendment to the constitution is still under discussion in the parliament.
（这项宪法修正案仍在国会讨论中。）

5. to 亦与情绪名词连用，形成“To one's + 情绪名词，……”（令某人……的是，……），通常置于句首：

To one's surprise,...	令某人惊讶的是，……
To one's joy,...	令某人高兴的是，……
To one's satisfaction,...	令某人满意的是，……
To one's dismay,...	令某人沮丧的是，……
To one's astonishment,...	令某人惊奇的是，……

例：To my surprise, he left without saying anything.
（令我惊讶的是，他什么也没说就离开了。）

To our joy, he passed the entrance exam and entered a good university.
（令我们高兴的是，他通过了入学考试，进入一所好大学就读。）

To their satisfaction, this new product sells well.
（令他们满意的是，这项新产品卖得很好。）

To his dismay, he found his car was gone.
（令他沮丧的是，他发现他的车不见了。）

To the audience's astonishment, the magician appeared again after the fire disappeared.
（令观众惊奇的是，火焰消失后魔术师再度出现。）

第九节 about

1. 表“环绕”之意，相当于 around：

sit about the campfire　　坐在营火边
= sit around the campfire
turn about　　向后转（= turn around）
beat about / around the bush　　讲话兜圈子

例: Stop beating about the bush and get to the point.
（讲话别再兜圈子了，快说重点。）

When she heard someone calling her, she turned about to see who it was.
（她听到有人在叫她时，便转过头去看是谁。）

2. 表“有关”，相当于 on / concerning / regarding：

write an article about air pollution　　写一篇有关空气污染的文章
= write an article on / concerning / regarding air pollution

例: He wrote an article about astrology.
（他写了一篇有关占星术的文章。）

We'll have a meeting about environmental protection.
= We'll have a meeting on / concerning / regarding environmental protection.
（我们将开一个有关环保问题的会议。）

但 about 多为口语用法，on 则在文字中使用，通常与书或文章题目连用。
a book on the Renaissance　　一本有关文艺复兴的书

第十一节　toward

1. 表“朝向”：

toward sb　　朝某人的方向

toward the station　　朝车站的方向

toward evening　　快傍晚时

例: The girl ran toward him with a bright smile.
（那个女孩带着灿烂的笑容跑向他。）

比较:

forward　　往前 (adv.)

backward　　往后，倒退 (adv.)

wayward　　任性的；四面八方的 (adj.)

例: The little child is toddling forward.
（那个小孩正摇摇晃晃地向前走。）

The students were asked to run backward.
（学生们被要求倒退着跑。）

She is a wayward girl, who never thinks about others.
（她是个任性的女孩，从不会为别人着想。）

2. 表“对于”：

one's attitude toward / to...　　某人对……的态度

例: What's your attitude toward mercy killing?
（你对于安乐死的看法如何？）

第十五节 within

1. 表"在……之内"，尤指在某空间或某时间之内，相当于 in：

within the country　　在这个国家之内
= in the country

within an hour　　在一小时之内
= in an hour

例: There's no desert within the country.
= There's no desert in the country.
（这个国家没有沙漠。）

I believe he can finish it within an hour.
= I believe he can finish it in an hour.
（我相信他能在一小时内完成。）

但 in an hour 亦可指"在一小时之后"。

例: He finished the work in an hour.
（他在一个小时之后完成了工作。）

2. 亦可指范围，表"在……范围内"：

act within the law　　在法律范围内行事

例: A law-abiding citizen should act within the law.
（守法的公民应该依法行事。）

A Quick Note

第十四章　反意疑问句

1. 反意疑问句的使用规则：

陈述句为肯定时，接否定反意疑问句，陈述句为否定时，接肯定反意疑问句。

a. 陈述句有 be 动词，反意疑问句沿用 be 动词。

例: He is nice, isn't he?
（他人不错，是不是？）
I wasn't sick, was I?
（我没病，是不是？）

b. 陈述句有助动词，反意疑问句沿用助动词。

例: He will come, won't he?
（他会来，是不是？）
They can't do it, can they?
（他们不能做这件事，是不是？）
You have done it, haven't you?
（你做完了，是不是？）
（have 为助动词，其后之 done 才是主要动词）

c. 陈述句有一般动词，反意疑问句则使用 do、does、did。

例: He came, didn't he?
（他来了，是不是？）
（came 为一般过去时，故用 didn't）
He gets up early, doesn't he?
（他起得很早，是不是？）
（gets up 为一般现在时，故用 doesn't）
He didn't come, did he?
（他没来，是不是？）
He has money, doesn't he?
（他有钱，是不是？）
（has 为动词，其后有宾语 money）

例: He ought to come,	shouldn't he?	(✓)
	oughtn't he to?	(×)

（他应当来，是不是？）

4. 否定反意疑问句中 not 的位置:

例: He is bad,	isn't he?	(✓)
	is he not?	(✓)
	is not he?	(×)

（他很坏，是不是？）

He left,	didn't he?	(✓)
	did he not?	(✓)
	did not he?	(×)

（他离开了，是不是？）

5. 反意疑问句须用人称代词:

反意疑问句一定要用人称代词，但陈述句首为 There is / are / was / were 等时，则须用 there。

例: John is fine, isn't John?　(×)
→ John is fine, isn't he?　(✓)
This is not good, is this?　(×)
→ This is not good, is it?　(✓)
That is good, isn't that?　(×)
→ That is good, isn't it?　(✓)
These are not good, are these?　(×)
→ These are not good, are they?　(✓)
Those are good, aren't those?　(×)
→ Those are good, aren't they?　(✓)
但:These is a man there, isn't it?　(×)
There is a man there, isn't there?　(✓)
（那里有个人，是不是？）

6. "I + 表意见动词 + that 从句" 的反意疑问句:

陈述句中，主语若为第一人称单数 I 表示意见或观点时，不可能对自己反问，应以其后的 that 从句形成反问。

例: I think that David is nice, don't I?（×）
（我认为大卫人不错，我不是这样想的吗？）
I think that David is nice, isn't he?（✓）
（我认为大卫人不错，是不是？）

EXERCISE

请选出一个正确的答案：

1. He's going to call us back, ______?
   (A) won't he (B) didn't he (C) doesn't he (D) isn't he
2. We had to wait a long time to get our visas, ______?
   (A) don't we (B) didn't we (C) couldn't we (D) shouldn't we
3. She's already made her reservation for next Saturday, ______?
   (A) hasn't she (B) isn't she (C) doesn't she (D) hasn't it
4. They don't seem to answer their phone whenever I call. There isn't anyone at home, ______?
   (A) isn't there (B) is there (C) is it (D) isn't it
5. John isn't a diligent student, for it is the third time he has been late, ______ ?
   (A) wasn't it (B) hasn't it (C) isn't it (D) hasn't he
6. You haven't seen Mary, ______ ?
   (A) have you (B) haven't you (C) has she (D) hasn't she
7. You have very little to eat in the morning, ______ you ?
   (A) do (B) don't (C) have (D) won't
8. On this busy road bus drivers ought to be especially careful, ______ ?
   (A) ought it (B) shouldn't they (C) oughtn't they to (D) ought they
9. Help me with this box, ______ ?
   (A) will you (B) shall we (C) shall you (D) don't you
10. Let's start early, ______ ?
    (A) will you (B) won't you (C) shall we (D) will we
11. Let me go home, ______ ?
    (A) will you (B) shall you (C) shall I (D) will I

12. Let us go to the movies, ______?
(A) shall we (B) will we (C) will you (D) won't we

13. You have a cold bath every morning, ______ you ?
(A) have (B) haven't (C) do (D) don't

14. You'd better go now, ______ you ?
(A) wouldn't (B) hadn't (C) would (D) didn't

15. This is the pen my father gave you, ______ ?
(A) isn't this (B) didn't he (C) didn't you (D) isn't it

16. That's where I used to live when I was a child, ______?
(A) isn't that (B) isn't it (C) didn't I (D) wasn't I

17. But for his accident, he might have been a wonderful pianist, ______ ?
(A) might he (B) mightn't he (C) didn't he (D) wasn't it

18. He never used to get up early, ______ he ?
(A) did (B) didn't (C) does (D) doesn't

19. You can hardly expect me to lend you money again, ______ you ?
(A) can (B) can't (C) do (D) don't

20. Mary seldom goes out in the evening, ______ ?
(A) does she (B) doesn't she
(C) does Mary (D) doesn't Mary

21. There's been no man in this house since you left, ______ ?
(A) hasn't there (B) isn't there (C) has there (D) isn't it

22. I think John has left, ______ ?
(A) don't I (B) has he (C) doesn't he (D) hasn't he

23. I needn't bring my books here tomorrow, ______ I ?
(A) need (B) do (C) shall (D) needn't

24. They need to be reminded of it, ______?
(A) needn't they (B) need they (C) don't they (D) doesn't it

25. I take it you won't be coming then, ______?
   (A) don't I　　(B) doesn't it　　(C) will you　　(D) shall I

标准答案

1. (D)　2. (B)　3. (A)　4. (B)　5. (C)　6. (A)　7. (A)　8. (B)　9. (A)　10. (C)
11. (A)　12. (C)　13. (D)　14. (B)　15. (D)　16. (B)　17. (B)　18. (A)　19. (A)　20. (A)
21. (C)　22. (D)　23. (A)　24. (C)　25. (C)

习题解说

1. 陈述句中有 be 动词，反意疑问句中沿用 be 动词。
2. had to（必须）在此视为一般动词，故反问部分用 didn't we。
3. She's 是 She has 的缩写，has 是完成时助动词，故用 has 形成反问。
4. 陈述句中有 there is / there be，反意疑问句中沿用 there。
5. 与第 1 题同理。
6. 与第 3 题同理。
7. 因 You have very little to eat. = You have almost nothing to eat. 是否定句，故反问部分应为肯定 do you。
   比较：You have a little to eat, don't you?
8. 陈述句中有 ought to 时，习惯用 should 反问。
9. 祈使句之后的反意疑问句一律用 will you。
10. "Let's..." 句型之后的反意疑问句一律用 shall we。
11. 此为一般祈使句，故用 will you。
12. 此亦为一般祈使句，故用 will you。
13. have 在此为一般动词，故用 don't 作反问。
14. You'd better = You had better，反问部分采用 hadn't。
15. 陈述句中的主语为 this，在反意疑问句中须改为 it。
16. 与第 15 题同理。
17. 陈述句中的助动词若不止一个，反意疑问句中用第一个助动词。

18. 此处 used 视为一般动词，之前有否定副词 never，故之后采用肯定反问，did 应为正选。
19. hardly 为否定副词。
20. seldom 为否定副词。
21. There's been = There has been
22. “I think + that 从句”中以 that 从句来形成反问。
23. need 用于肯定句是一般动词，用于否定句则是助动词，无论第几人称均不加 s。

He needs to go, doesn't he?

（他需要去，不是吗？）

He need not go, need he?

= He doesn't need to go, does he?

（他不需要去，是吗？）

24. 见上题解答。
25. I take it (that) ... = I think (that) ...